

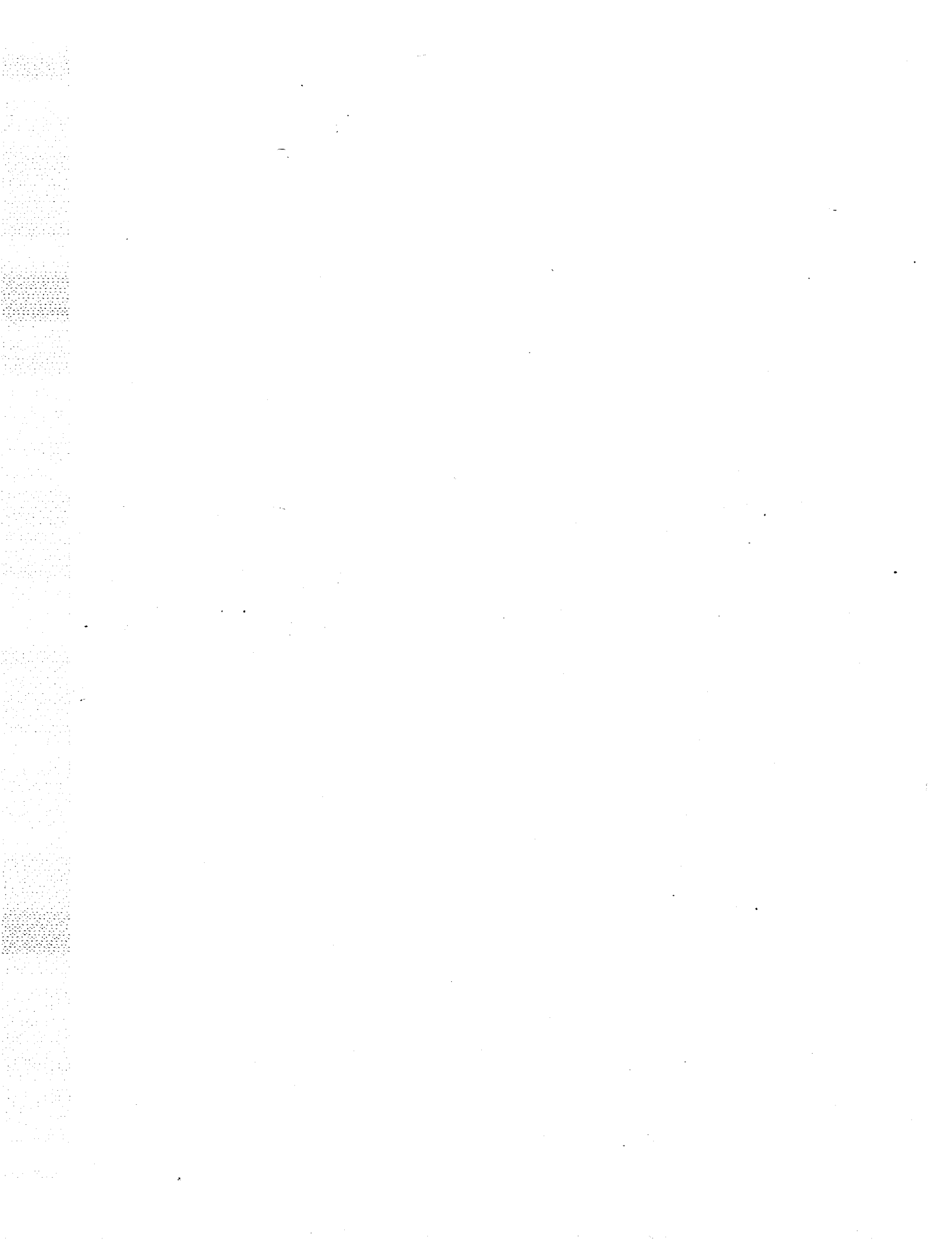
C H I N E S E - C A N T O N E S E  
REFRESHER COURSE

VOLUME I

Instructional Units 1-30

March 1966

DEFENSE LANGUAGE INSTITUTE  
FOREIGN LANGUAGE CENTER



CHINESE-CANTONESE REFRESHER COURSE

MATERIALS

Printed Material: 1 vol. Introduction  
1 vol. **Instructional Units 1-30**  
1 vol. Instructional Units 31-60  
1 vol. Instructional Units 61-90  
1 vol. Instructional Units 91-120  
1 vol. Instructional Units 121-140  
1 vol. Instructor's Manual  
1 vol. Language Laboratory Practice Units  
1-60  
1 vol. \*Formal Testing Units 1-10  
\*Formal Testing Units Answer Sheet

Reference Material: 1 vol. Dictionary of Common Chinese-  
Cantonese Characters  
1 vol. List of Basic Chinese-Cantonese  
Military Words

Recorded Material: 140 reels Instructional Units 1-140  
60 reels Language Laboratory Practice Units  
1-60  
10 reels \*Formal Testing Units 1-10

Film Material: 1 reel "Free China's Fighting Men"  
MF 30-8444  
1 reel "Mighty Chinese Armed Forces"  
USALS-86  
1 reel "Production of Combat Intelligence"  
TF 30-1494

\*FOR OFFICIAL USE ONLY

# CHINESE-CANTONESE REFRESHER COURSE

## INSTRUCTIONAL UNITS 1-30

### PRINTED MATERIALS

This volume contains 30 fifty-minute instructional units (Instructional Units 1 through 30) designed for classroom instruction. Each unit contains the following parts:

Oral Material. The aim of this part is to maintain and develop the student's ability in oral fluency. New elements of the language are introduced for review and study in this part only. The style of this part is in conversational Cantonese Chinese. It is transcribed in romanization, calligraphed in Chinese characters, and translated into idiomatic English.

Reading Material. The aim of this part is to maintain and develop the student's ability in reading. No new element of the language is introduced in this part. There is a gradual development from conversational to literary style. It is calligraphed in Chinese characters.

Questions. This part is an informal check-up test of the student's ability to master the materials in the unit. It is transcribed in romanization. The questions and approved answers, calligraphed in Chinese characters, are in the Instructor's Manual.

Vocabulary and Notes. This part contains a complete list of vocabulary and grammatical notes which are intended for study by the student and support current or subsequent materials.

CHINESE-CANTONESE REFRESHER COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL UNITS 1-30

RECORDED MATERIALS

As the classroom supervisor or instructor available may or may not be a native linguist, each Instructional Unit is supported by one individual reel of pre-recorded tape designed to be used in a tape language course with a minimum of supervision. All tapes are for use on dual channel type magnetic tape recorder and are properly identified. Each tape contains the following parts:

Oral Material. This part contains listening and repeat practice.

Reading Material. This part also contains listening and repeat practice.

Questions. This part contains a number of questions. Blank spaces are provided on the tape for the student to record his answers.

For Instructional Units, the following study procedures are to be observed when the classroom supervisor or instructor available is not a native linguist:

1. Listen to the Oral Material Listening Practice. Refer to the printed material, if necessary.
2. Repeat after the Oral Material Repeat Practice. Refer to the printed material, if necessary.
3. Listen to the Reading Material Listening Practice. Refer to the printed material.

CHINESE-CANTONESE REFRESHER COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL UNITS 1-30

4. Repeat after the Reading Material Repeat Practice.

Refer to the printed material.

5. Answer all questions. Record answers on blank spaces provided between questions.

6. Rewind the tape and play back for self-evaluation.

7. If more time is available, repeat Step 2 and 4.

CHINESE-CANTONESE REFRESHER COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL UNITS 1-30

CORRELATED MATERIALS

Instructional Units 1 through 30 are to be correlated with 13 fifty-minute language laboratory practice units (Language Laboratory Practice Units 1 through 13) designed for individual practice. Each unit contains the following parts:

Aural Comprehension Material. The aim of this part is to maintain and develop the student's ability in aural comprehension. No new element of the language is introduced in this part. The style of this part is in conversational Cantonese Chinese. As this part is for aural comprehension, no printed material is necessary for the student. This part, transcribed in romanization, is in the Language Laboratory Practice Units.

Questions. This part is an informal check-up test of the student's ability to master the materials in the unit. No printed material is necessary for the student. The questions and approved answers, transcribed in romanization, are in the Language Laboratory Practice Units.

Instead of printed material, the student is issued an individual reel of pre-recorded tape designed to be used in a tape language course with a minimum of supervision. All tapes are for use on dual channel type magnetic tape recorder and are properly identified. Each tape contains the following parts:

CHINESE-CANTONESE REFRESHER COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL UNITS 1-30

Aural Comprehension Material. This part contains listening and repeat practice.

Questions. This part contains a number of questions. Blank spaces are provided on the tape for the student to record his answers.

For Language Laboratory Practice Units, the following study procedures are to be observed:

1. Listen to the Aural Comprehension Material Listening Practice.
2. Repeat after Aural Comprehension Material Repeat Practice.
3. Answer all questions. Record answers on blank spaces provided between questions.
4. Rewind the tape and play back for self-evaluation.
5. If more time is available, repeat Step 1, 2, 3, and 4, and/or record at the end of the tape a resumé of the Aural Comprehension Material.



CHINESE-CANTONESE REFRESHER COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL UNITS 1-30

TESTING MATERIALS

Instructional Units 1 through 30 and Language Laboratory Practice Units 1 through 13 are to be further correlated with 2 fifty-minute formal testing units (Formal Testing Units 1 and 2) designed to test the student's mastery of the materials in these units. Specific instructions and guidance to the student in connection with the tests are given in each of the Formal Testing Units which are "For Official Use Only".

CHINESE-CANTONESE REFRESHER COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL UNITS 1-30

SCHEDULE

1st Wk				2nd Wk				3rd Wk			
M	Hr	1	IU 1	M	Hr	16	IU 11	M	Hr	31	IU 21
		2	IU 2			17	IU 12			32	IU 22
		3	LLPU 1			18	LLPU 6			33	LLPU 10
T	Hr	4	IU 3	T	Hr	19	IU 13	T	Hr	34	IU 23
		5	IU 4			20	IU 14			35	IU 24
		6	LLPU 2			21	FTU 1			36	LLPU 11
W	Hr	7	IU 5	W	Hr	22	IU 15	W	Hr	37	IU 25
		8	IU 6			23	IU 16			38	IU 26
		9	LLPU 3			24	LLPU 7			39	LLPU 12
T	Hr	10	IU 7	T	Hr	25	IU 17	T	Hr	40	IU 27
		11	IU 8			26	IU 18			41	IU 28
		12	LLPU 4			27	LLPU 8			42	FTU 2
F	Hr	13	IU 9	F	Hr	28	IU 19	F	Hr	43	IU 29
		14	IU 10			29	IU 20			44	IU 30
		15	LLPU 5			30	LLPU 9			45	LLPU 13

IU - Instructional Unit

LLPU - Language Laboratory Practice Unit

FTU - Formal Testing Unit

CHINESE-CANTONESE REFRESHER COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL UNITS 1-30

CONTENTS

Instructional Unit	Page
1	1
2	8
3	15
4	22
5	29
6	37
7	44
8	52
9	60
10	70
11	77
12	85
13	92
14	99
15	107
16	114
17	122
18	129
19	136
20	144
21	152
22	160

CHINESE-CANTONESE REFRESHER COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL UNITS 1-30

Instructional Unit	Page
23	167
24	174
25	184
26	191
27	198
28	206
29	213
30	220

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 1

ORAL MATERIAL

Ch'ān Sin-Shaang: Tsó-shān, tsó-shān.

Paâk Sheûng-Wai: Tsó-shān, Sin-Shaang.

C: Ngõh haî Ch'ān Kaaù-Koon. Neî haî pin-wai\* à?

P: Ngõh haî Paâk-Chi-On.

C: Ngõh haî sin-shaang. Neî haî mi-yě à?

P: Ngõh haî hôk-shaang.

C: K'ui ne? K'ui to haî hôk-shaang mà?

P: Haî, k'ui to haî hôk-shaang.

C: Neî haî m-haî kwan-koon à?

P: Haî, ngõh haî kwan-koon; ngõh haî Paâk Sheûng-Wai.

C: K'ui yîk-to haî kwan-koon m-haî à?

P: M-haî, k'ui m-haî kwan-koon.

C: K'ui haî sê-ping, haî m-haî à?

P: M-haî, k'ui yîk-to m-haî sê-ping.

C: K'ui m-haî kwan-koon, m-haî sê-ping, haî mi-yě à?

P: K'ui haî kwan-sê. K'ui haî Cheung Sheûng-Sê.

C: M-koi, m-koi.

P: M-shai-m-koi.

C: Tsoi-kin, tsoi-kin!

P: Tsoi-kin, Ch'ān Sin-Shaang!

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 1

Mr. Ch'an: Good morning!

Capt. White: Good morning, sir!

C: I'm Instructor Ch'ān. Who are you?

W: I'm John White.

C: I'm a teacher. What are you?

W: I'm a student.

C: What is he? Is he a student?

W: Yes, he is.

C: Are you an officer?

W: Yes, I am. I'm Capt. White.

C: Is he an officer?

W: No, he isn't.

C: He is a private, isn't he?

W: No, he isn't.

C: He is not an officer, nor a private; what is he?

W: He is a noncommissioned officer; he is M/Sgt Cheung.

C: Thank you.

W: You are welcome.

C: Good-bye!

W: Good-bye, Mr. Ch'ān!

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 1

陳先生：早晨，早晨！  
白上尉：早晨，先生！  
陳：我係陳教官，你係邊位呀？  
白：我係白志安。  
陳：我係先生，你係乜野呀？  
白：我係學生。  
陳：佢呢？佢都係學生嗎？  
白：係，佢都係學生。  
陳：你係唔係軍官呀？  
白：係，我係軍官，我係白上尉。  
陳：佢亦都係軍官，唔係呀？  
白：唔係，佢唔係軍官。  
陳：佢係士兵，係呀？  
白：唔係，佢亦都唔係士兵。  
陳：佢係軍官，唔係士兵，係乜野呀？  
白：佢係軍士，佢係張上士。  
陳：唔該，唔該。  
白：唔使，唔該。  
陳：再見，再見！  
白：再見，陳先生！

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 1

READING MATERIAL

白志安係學生，唔係先生。佢唔係士兵，亦都唔係軍士。佢係軍官；佢係上尉。

張上士都係學生，唔係先生。佢係軍士，唔係軍官，唔係士兵。

陳先生係教官，唔係軍官，唔係軍士，亦都唔係士兵；佢係先生，唔係學生。



INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 1

QUESTIONS

1. Paâk-Chi-On hai m̄-hai s̄z-ping à?
2. Paâk-Chi-On hai m̄-hai kwan-s̄z à?
3. Paâk-Chi-On m̄-hai s̄z-ping, m̄-hai kwan-s̄z; k'uĩ hai mi-yě à?
4. Paâk-Chi-On hai sheûng-wai, hai m̄-hai à?
5. Paâk Sheûng-Wai hai sin-shaang m̄-hai à?
6. Paâk Sheûng-Wai m̄-hai sin-shaang, hai mi-yě à?
7. Paâk Sheûng-Wai hai hôk-shaang, Cheung Sheûng-S̄z hai hôk-shaang mã?
8. Cheung Sheûng-S̄z hai hôk-shaang, Ch'ân Sin-Shaang ne?
9. Ch'ân Sin-Shaang m̄-hai hôk-shaang, hai m̄-hai sin-shaang à?
10. Ch'ân Sin-Shaang hai kaaü-koon m̄-hai à?

# INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 1

## VOCABULARY AND NOTES

Ch'ān a common surname; to arrange, spread out, exhibit, make a statement, make a plea; old, long time

sin-shaang Mr, mister, teacher, instructor, sir! husband

tsó-shān good morning! early in the morning, morning!

paâk White, surname; white, empty, vain, naked, plain, clear, obvious; to explain

sheûng-wai captain (Army, Air Force, Marine Corps)

ngõh I, me, our (literary)

haî to be; to equal; it is; to be sure; omission or use before quality words; to indicate contrast; to indicate emphatic assertion

kaaû-koon instructor, military instructor, teacher

neî you (singular), thou

pin wai\*? an honorific auxiliary noun (AN) for "who?"

â mildly emphatic final particle, prefix for familiar way of calling persons

Paâk-Chi-On John White

mi-yě, mat-yě what? what kind of...? anything, something; any, some; why?

hòk-shaang student

k'ui he, she, him, her, it; them (refer to inanimate things)

ne interrogative particle; and...? how about...? particle for pause; particle softening a statement; interrogative particle having the force of 'and...?' 'how about...?' 'then...?' stress; interjection, there!

to too, also, likewise; in all cases; in either case; even (with negative); often pronounced too-with a short close oo; to haî 'is also'; note the position of to before the verb

mâ fusion of m + â; an interrogative particle; it is

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 1

probably an abbreviation of the open form of the A- not -A question

m̄ not; un-; cannot

kwan-koon military officer

yîk-to also, too

sâ-ping private, enlisted man, soldier

kwan-sâ noncommissioned officer

Cheung a common surname; AN for tables, chairs, etc.

sheûng-sâ master-sergeant

m-koi thank, thank you; much obliged; (I) ought not (to trouble you), - excuse me; pardon me; please

m-shai m-koi you are welcome, not at all, don't mention

tsoi-kin good bye, Cf: au revoir, auf Wiedersehen: tsoi-kin is seldom spoken alone, it is either spoken twice very rapidly or once with the particle lâ

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 2

ORAL MATERIAL

Ch'ân Kaaü-Koon: Paâk Sheûng-Wai!

Paâk Sheûng-Wai: Ch'ân Kaaü-Koon!

C: Neï-teî yaü mǒ shue à?

P: Yaü à, ngǒh-teî yaü shue à.

C: Neï-teî yaü pat mǒ à?

P: Yaü a, ngǒh-teî yîk yaü pat a.

C: Kóm, neï-teî yaü shue t'ûng pat, hai m-hai à?

P: Mǒ ts'òh là. Ngǒh-teî yaü shue yaü yaü pat.

C: K'ui-teî ne? K'ui-teî yaü chí m à?

P: Mǒ wòh, k'ui-teî mǒ chí wòh.

C: Pô\* ne? K'ui-teî yaü pô\* mà?

P: To mǒ pòh, k'ui-teî mǒ chí, yaü mǒ pô\*.

C: Kóm ā, k'ui-teî yaü mi-yě ne?

P: K'ui-teî chí yaü shue yaü pat, taân-hai mǒ chí mǒ pô\*.

C: Kóm, neï-teî ne? Neï-teî yaü mat ne?

P: Ngǒh-teî m-chí yaü shue yaü pat, i-ch'é yaü yaü chí, yaü yaü pô\* t'im pòh.

C: Tsoi-kìn, tsoi-kìn!

P: Ch'ân Sin-Shaang, t'ing-yât tsoi-kìn!

## INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 2

Instructor Ch'ān: Capt White!

Capt. White: Mr. Ch'ān.

C: Do you have books?

W: Yes, we do.

C: Do you have pens?

W: Yes, we do.

C: In that case, you have books and pens, don't you?

W: You're right. We have books and pens.

C: How about them? Do they have paper?

W: No, they don't.

C: How about exercise books? Do they have any?

W: No, they don't have paper nor exercise books.

C: In that case, what do they have?

W: They only have books and pens, but not paper and exercise books.

C: So, how about you? What do you have?

W: Not only do we have books and pens, but also paper and exercise books.

C: Good-bye!

W: See you tomorrow, Mr. Ch'ān.

陳：官！尉！  
 白：尉！官！  
 陳：你地有書呀？  
 白：有呀，我地有書呀。  
 陳：你地有筆呀？  
 白：有呀，我地亦有筆呀。  
 陳：敢，你地有書同筆，係唔係呀？  
 白：冇錯啦，我地有書又筆。  
 陳：佢地呢？佢地有紙唔？  
 白：冇唱，佢地有紙唱。  
 陳：簿呢？佢地有簿嗎？  
 白：都有嚟。佢地有紙又有簿。  
 陳：敢呀，佢地有乜野呢？  
 白：佢地祇有書有筆，但係有紙有簿。  
 陳：敢，你地呢？你地有乜呢？  
 白：我地唔祇有書有筆，而且又有紙又有簿。  
 陳：簿添嚟。  
 陳：再見，再見！  
 白：陳先生，聽日再見！

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 2

READING MATERIAL

白上尉有書，我地有書，我地亦有筆；  
我地有書又有筆。我地有書同筆。

佢地有紙，佢地又有簿；佢地祇有書  
有筆，但係有紙有簿。

我地唔祇有書有筆；而且又有紙，又  
有簿。

## INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 2

### QUESTIONS

1. Paâk Sheûng-Wai yaũ mǒ shue à?
2. Neĩ-teĩ yaũ mǒ shue à?
3. Neĩ-teĩ yaũ pat mǒ à?
4. Neĩ-teĩ yaũ shue t'ûng pat, haĩ m̄-haĩ à?
5. K'uĩ-teĩ yaũ chí m̄ à?
6. K'uĩ-teĩ mǒ chí, k'uĩ-teĩ yaũ pô\* mǒ à?
7. K'uĩ-teĩ mǒ chí t'ûng pô\*, chí yaũ mi-yě à?
8. K'uĩ-teĩ chí yaũ mi-yě t'ûng mi-yě, taân-haĩ mǒ mi-yě t'ûng mi-yě à?
9. K'uĩ-teĩ mǒ chí mǒ pô\*; kóm, neĩ-teĩ ne?
10. Neĩ-teĩ yaũ chí yaũ pat, yaũ yaũ mi-yě à?



## INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 2

### VOCABULARY AND NOTES

nei-teî you (plural)

yaũ to have; there is; with; -ful; -ed; is as much as; did; the negative of yaũ 'to have' is mõ 'not to have'; m̄ is never used before yaũ; the force of yaũ is 'is as much as' as against plain hai 'is'; yaũ without a subject or with a subject denoting a place, is best translated 'there is'.

mõ not to have, there is not, to have not, did not; without; -less; not as much as

shue book, AN: pô, poón

ngõh-teî we, us

pat writing instrument, pen, pencil, Chinese brush; AN: chi; AN for a sum of money

a particle for animated enumeration, emphatic statement, etc.

yîk 'also', synonymous with to; on the whole, to is used with a different subject for the same predicate; while yîk is used with the same subject for a different predicate, and compound yîk-to is used in either case: ngõh yaũ pat, nei to yaũ pat; ngõh yaũ pat, yîk- (to) yaũ shue.

kóm so, thus, like this, like that; in this manner; then; resumptive adverb which is spoken after the chatting is over to restore the conversational atmosphere.

t'ung and, for, with, together with; t'ung may be omitted when not required for emphasis or clarity; between a pronoun and a noun, t'ung is not omitted.

mõ-ts'òh that's right; no mistake.

là final particle indicating a new situation, or the realization of an existing situation.

yaũ again, moreover, besides, or; yaũ...yaũ... 'both... and...' before predicates only; yaũ mõ (or m̄)...yaũ mõ (or m̄) 'neither...nor...'

k'uî-teî they, them

chí paper; AN: cheung

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 2

wòh final particle, final particle denoting quoted statement.

pô\* exercise book, writing pad; pô 'AN for books, exercise books, etc', part, portion'

pòh particle having the force of 'of course, I suppose'

ā particle of hesitation; particle before a pause;  
negative particle

chí only, merely; but, however; still

taân-haî but; yet; however

mat what? anything, something; what kind of...? any, some

m̄-chí not only

î-ch'é but also; moreover; besides

t'im too; also; to add to; additionally, as well

t'ing-yât tsoi-kin 'see you tomorrow'; in t'ing-yât tsoi-kin, the phrase tsoi-kin is used in the sense as part of a sentence.

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 3

ORAL MATERIAL

Paâk Sheûng-Wai: Cheung Sheûng-Sz̄, neĩ hai pin shue yān à?

Cheung Sheûng-Sz̄: Sheûng-Wai, ngõh hai Meĩ-Kwòk yān, hai Meĩ-Kwòk Ka-Shaáng yān.

P: Neĩ hai Meĩ-Kwòk Ka-Shaáng pin shue yān à?

C: Ngõh hai Meĩ-Kwòk Ka-Shaáng Saam-Faān-Shĩ yān.

P: Neĩ shik pin chúng wâ\* à? Neĩ ooĩ kóng Chung-Kwòk wâ\* mà? Shik t'eng Kwóng-Tung wâ\* mà?

C: Ngõh m̄-shik Kwóng-Tung wâ\*. Ngõh chí shik Ying-Kwòk wâ\*, Meĩ-Kwòk wâ\*, Faat-Kwòk wâ\*, Tak-Kwòk wâ\*, Ngõh-Kwòk wâ\*, Yât-Poón wâ\*, shóh-ĩ, ngõh seúng hôk Chung-Kwòk wâ\*, hôk kóng Kwóng-Tung wâ\*, hôk t'ai Chung-Mān shue, hôk sé Chung-Mān tsz̄.

P: Neĩ T'aaĩ-T'aaĩ\* ne? K'ui hai pin shue yān à? K'ui ooĩ m̄-ooĩ Chung-Mān à?

C: K'ui hai Meĩ-Kwòk Chung-Kwòk yān. K'ui m̄-chí shik Ying-Mān, Meĩ-Mān, Faat-Mān, Tak-Mān, Ngõh-Mān, Yât-Mān, i-ch'é ooĩ t'eng, ooĩ kóng, ooĩ tük, ooĩ sé, ooĩ faan-yik Chung-Mān t'im pòh; shóh-ĩ, ngõh iù hôk Chung-Mān.

P: M̄-kwaaĩ-tak la!

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 3

Capt. White: M/Sgt. Cheung, where are you from?

M/Sgt Cheung: Capt, I'm an American. I'm from California.

W: What part of California are you from?

C: I'm from San Francisco, California.

W: What language do you know? Do you speak Chinese? Do you understand Cantonese?

C: No, sir. I don't know Cantonese. I only know English, American, French, German, Russian, and Japanese. Therefore, I would like to learn Chinese, to learn to speak Cantonese, to read Chinese books, and to write Chinese characters.

W: How about your wife? Where is she from? Does she know Chinese?

C: She is a Chinese American. Not only does she know English, American, French, German, Russian, and Japanese, but she also understands, speaks, reads, writes and translates Chinese. Therefore, I have to learn Chinese.

W: No wonder!

- 白上尉：張上士，你係邊處人呀？
- 張上士：上尉，我係美國人，係美國加省人。
- 白：你係美國加省邊處人呀？
- 張：我係美國加省三藩市人。
- 白：你識邊種話呀？你會講中國話嗎？識聽廣東話嗎？
- 張：我唔識廣東話。我祇識英國話，美國話，法國話，德國話，俄國話，日本話，所以我想學中國話，學講廣東話，睇中文書，學寫中文字。
- 白：你太太呢？佢係邊處人呀？佢會唔會中文呀？
- 張：佢係美國中國人。佢唔祇識英文，而且會聽，會講，會讀，會寫，而且會文添，所以我要學中文。
- 白：唔怪得啦！

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 3

READING MATERIAL

英話學，  
識本話字。  
· 佢日話。  
人話，中國文。  
市國學寫中。  
藩俄想學。  
三省話，佢書，  
加國所文。  
國德話，睇中。  
美話，睇中。  
係話，睇中。  
士國廣東學。  
上法國話，  
張話，唔東話。  
國但係廣東講。

· 人，中文，佢  
國俄讀以  
中，會所  
國文，中文。  
美，中文，中。  
· 係，中中學  
太文講譯要  
太法會繙士  
張，會繙士  
· 太文，張  
太美，中字係  
太，聽文但  
有文會中，  
士英且寫文  
上識而會中  
張祇；學  
佢日文書使  
唔日文書使

### INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 3

#### QUESTIONS

1. Cheung Sheûng-Sz hai pin shue yān à?
2. Cheung Sheûng-Sz shik m-shik kóng Kwóng-Tung wâ\* à?
3. Cheung Sheûng-Sz shik m-shik sé Chung-Mān tsz à?
4. Cheung Sheûng-Sz m-shik Chung-Kwòk wâ\*, shik m-shik Yāt-Poón wâ\* à?
5. K'ui shik Yāt-Poón wâ\*, yau shik pin chún wâ\* à?
6. K'ui m-shik Kwóng-Tung wâ\*, k'ui seung m-seung hôk kóng Kwóng-Tung wâ\* à?
7. K'ui seung m-seung hôk sé Chung-Mān tsz à?
8. Cheung Sheûng-Sz yau mō t'aaì-t'aaì\* à?
9. Cheung T'aaì-T'aaì\* hai pin shue yān à?
10. Cheung T'aaì-T'aaì\* shik m-shik Ying-Mān à?
11. Cheung T'aaì-T'aaì\* m-chí shik Ying-Mān, yau shik mi-yě mán à?
12. K'ui ooi kóng Chung-Mān, ooi t'eng Chung-Mān; k'ui ooi m-ooi tük Chung-Mān shue, ooi m-ooi sé Chung-Mān tsz à?
13. K'ui ooi m-ooi faan-yik Chung-Mān à?
14. Kóm, k'ui shai m-shai hôk Chung-Mān à?
15. Cheung T'aaì-T'aaì\* m-shai hôk Chung-Mān, Cheung Sheûng-Sz ne?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 3

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

pin shuè what place? where?

yān person, human being, people, man; AN: kòh; yān is a general word meaning 'man, woman, person, human-being; yān by itself is to be translated 'a man'.

Mei-Kwòk America (the United States), full name: Mei-Lei-Kin '(A)merica; Mei-Lei-Kin Hòp-Chùng-Kwòk 'The United States of America'

Ka-Shaáng California, State of California

Saam-Faān-Shī San Francisco

shik to know how, be able to, know, recognize, acquaint with

pin chùng pin 'which?'; chùng 'kind, sort, species; pin chùng 'what kind? what?'

oōi to know how to; can; be possible; will; would

kóng to speak, talk, say, tell, explain

Chung-Kwòk Wâ\* Chung-Kwòk 'China, Chinese'; wâ\* 'spoken language'; Chung-Kwòk wâ\* 'Chinese language (spoken), 'spoken Chinese'

Chung-Mān Chung 'abbreviation of China, Chinese, center, central'; mān 'spoken or written language'; Chung-Mān 'spoken or written Chinese language'

t'eng to listen, listen to, understand (language)

Kwóng-Tung Wâ\* Kwóng-Tung 'Kwangtung, Kwangtung Province'; Kwóng-Tung wâ\* 'Cantonese language (spoken), spoken Cantonese'

Mei-Kwòk Wâ\* Mei 'abbreviation of America, beautiful, pretty, handsome'; kwòk 'country, nation, national'; Mei-Kwòk 'United States, America, USA'; Mei-Kwòk Wâ\* 'American language (spoken), American English (spoken)'

Mei-Mān American English (spoken or written)

Ying-Kwòk Wâ\* Ying 'abbreviation of England, English, Great Britain'; Ying-Kwòk 'England, Great Britain'; Ying-Kwòk Wâ\* 'English language (spoken), spoken English'



INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 3

Ying-Mān English language (spoken or written)

Faât-Kwòk Wâ\* Faât 'abbreviation of France, French'; Faât  
-Kwòk 'France, French'; Faât-Kwòk Wâ\* 'French language (spoken)'

Faât-Mān 'French language (spoken or written)'

Tak-Kwòk Wâ\* Tak 'abbreviation of Germany, German'; Tak-Kwòk  
'Germany, German'; Tak-Kwòk Wâ\* 'German-Language (spoken)'

Tak-Mān German language (spoken or written)

Ngõh-Kwòk Wâ\* Ngõh 'abbreviation of Russia, Russian';  
Ngõh-Kwòk 'Russia, Russian'; Ngõh-Kwòk Wâ\* 'Russian language  
(spoken)'

Ngõh-Mān Russian language (spoken or written)

Yât-Poón Wâ\* Yât 'abbreviation of Japan, Japanese, sun,  
day, date'; Yât-Poón 'Japan, Japanese'; Yât-Poón Wâ\* 'Japanese  
language (spoken)'

Yât-Mān Japanese language (spoken or written)

shóh-ĩ therefore, so; that's why...

seúng to want, wish, desire, intend, prepare to, think,  
consider, call to mind, have in mind

hòk to learn, study, imitate, follow

t'ai to read, look at, see, observe

sé to write, calligraph, depict, describe, make a sketch

tsê Chinese character, word, writing

t'ai-t'ai\* Mrs., wife, madame!

túk to read (aloud), take (a course), study

faan-yík to translate (written or oral)

iù to have to, want, require; must, should, ought to

m-kwai-tak! no wonder!

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 4

ORAL MATERIAL

Cheung Sheung-Sz: Mă-Lei, neĩ hái pin shuè à?

Cheung T'aai-T'aai\*: À-Chim, ngõh hái ni shuè. Neĩ fòng hòk lā?

S: Hái à. Neĩ hái pin shuè à?

T: Ngõh hái ch'ue-fōng\* shuè.

S: Neĩ hái kóh shuè tsô mi-yě à?

T: Ngõh hái ch'ue-fōng\* shuè chué faân. Neĩ lai ngõh ni shuè  
la.

S: Ti sai-man-tsaĩ hái pin shuè à? Hui pin shuè à?

T: À-tsaĩ hái shue-fōng\* shuè tūk shue. À-nuĩ\* hái fan-fōng\*  
shuè fàn kaaù.

S: Ngõh hui shue-fōng\* t'ung fàn-fōng\* t'ai-hă k'ui-teĩ la.  
Õh, uên-loĩ À-tsaĩ hái haak-t'eng t'ai shue. À-nuĩ\* hái  
sai-shan-fōng\* shuè.

T: Neĩ hái hòk-haaù tsô mi-yě à?

S: Ngõh-teĩ hòk kóng Kwóng-Tung wâ\*, hòk t'ai Chung-Măn shue,  
hòk sé Chung-Măn tsz, hòk faan-yík Ying-Măn t'ung Chung-  
Măn.

T: Neĩ hui shue-fōng\* wan-tsaâp-hă kung-fòh, in-haù lai faân-  
t'eng shik faân la.

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 4

M/Sgt Cheung: Mary, where are you?

Mrs. Cheung: Jim, I'm here. Are you home from school?

Sgt: Yes. Where are you?

Mrs: I'm here in the kitchen.

Sgt: What are you doing there?

Mrs: I'm cooking. Come here.

Sgt: Where are the children? Where did they go?

Mrs: Junior is studying in the study, and our daughter is sleeping in the bedroom.

Sgt: Let me go to the study and bedroom and take a look at them. Ah! In fact Junior is reading in the living room and the girl is in the bathroom.

Mrs: What have you been doing in school?

Sgt: We learn to speak Cantonese, to read Chinese books, to write Chinese characters, and to translate English and Chinese.

Mrs: You go and do the homework in the study. Then come to have dinner in the dining room.

張上士：瑪利，你喺邊處呀？  
 張太太：亞占，我喺呢處，你放學啦？  
 張上士：係呀，你喺邊處呀？  
 張太太：我喺廚房處。  
 張上士：你喺個處做乜野呀？  
 張太太：我喺廚房處煮飯。你黎我呢處啦。  
 張上士：我啲細仔喺房處煮邊處呀？  
 張太太：亞處喺書房處讀書；亞女喺房處。  
 張上士：我原身你喺房處睇吓佢地啦。啊，  
 張太太：你喺學校做乜野呀？睇中文書，  
 張上士：我學地寫中文，學廣東話，學繙英文。  
 張太太：你學去食飯，學中書，學寫去食飯。

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 4

READING MATERIAL

張上士係亞占·佢喺學校處讀書·佢  
學講廣東話，學睇中文書，學寫中文字，  
學繙譯英文同中文·

佢放學·佢去書房\*同喇房\*處·佢去個  
處想睇吓啲細伎仔·佢喺書房\*處溫習吓啲  
功課，然後去飯廳處食飯·

張太太係瑪利·佢喺廚房處煮飯·

亞仔喺客廳處，佢喺個處睇吓書·佢  
唔喺書房\*處讀書·

亞女\*喺洗身房\*處·佢唔喺喇房\*處喇覺·

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 4

QUESTIONS

1. À-Chim hái mi-yě à?
2. Cheung Sheûng-Sz hái hôk-haaû shuè tsô mi-yě à?
3. K'ui hôk mi-yě wâ\* à?
4. K'ui hôk kóng Kwóng-Tung wâ\*, yâu hôk mi-yě à?
5. K'ui hui shue-fông\* t'ung fân-fông\* shuè tsô mi-yě à?
6. K'ui hái pin-shuè wan-tsaâp kung-fôh à?
7. K'ui hái shue-fông\* shuè wan-tsaâp kung-fôh, in-chi-haû hui pin shuè à?
8. Mã-Lei hái pin-kôh à?
9. Mã-Lei hái ch'ue-fông\* shuè tsô mi-yě à?
10. À-tsaí hái pin shuè à?
11. À-tsaí hái m-hái shue-fông\* shuè à?
12. K'ui m-hái shue-fông\* shuè; k'ui hái pin shuè à?
13. K'ui hái kôh shuè tsô mi-yě à?
14. À-nui\* hái m-hái fân-fông\* shuè à?
15. À-nui\* m-hái fân-fông\* shuè, k'ui hái pin shuè à?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 4

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

Mǎ-Leī Mary

hái to be at, to be in; at, in, on; from, by way of

pin shuè pin? 'which? what?' shuè "suffix for 'place, locality'"; pin shuè? 'what place? which place? where?' hái pin shuè? 'to be where?'

À-Chim Jim, Jimmy, James

ni shuè ni 'this, these'; shuè "suffix for 'place, locality'"; ni shuè 'this place, here'

fòng hôk School dismissed, school is out

lā! particle expressing a slight surprise, doubt, questioning or disagreement and demand answer

ch'uē-fōng\*, a.f. ch'ui-fōng\* kitchen,

shuè suffix for 'place, locality'

kóh shuè kóh 'that, those', shuè 'place, locality'; kóh shuè 'that place, there'

tsô mi-yě? tsô 'to do, make, manufacture, be, act as, for, into'; mi-yě? 'what? which?' tsô mi-yě? 'to do what? what for?'

chué faân chué 'to cook, boil'; faân 'meal, cooked rice'; chué faân 'to cook, cook a meal, cook rice'

lai to come; lai is also used as a compliment denoting direction toward the speaker, 'hither, here'; to, in order to; particle expressing mild surprise

ti 'the' used in place of any and all auxiliary nouns with indefinite plurals; some, a little; sign of comparative degree, more, ...er

sai-man-tsaí child, children

hui to go, be any, be off; to; hui is also used as a compliment denoting direction away from the speaker

À tsai! À 'prefix for familiar way of calling a person; tsai 'son'; À tsai! 'son! my son! my boy! 'Junior! Sonny!'

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 4

shue-fōng\*, a.f. shue-fōng shue 'book'; fōng\* 'room';  
shue-fōng\* 'studying-room, study'

tūk shue tūk 'to study, learn'; tūk shue 'to study'

À nuǐ\*! À 'prefix for familiar way of calling a person';  
nuǐ\* 'daughter'; À nuǐ\* ! 'my daughter!'

fàn-fōng\* fàn 'to sleep, lie down'; fàn-fōng\* 'bedroom'

fàn kaaù to sleep, lie down

hǎ AN for verbs, 'a stroke, a beat'; hǎ after a verb has  
the force of 'just', 'a little', like German: mal. It can also  
be translated by such forms as 'take a look', 'make an attempt',  
'put in a word', etc., since it is an abbreviation of yat-hǎ 'a  
stroke'

uēn-loī in fact, as a matter of fact; originally, fun-  
damentally

haāk-t'eng haāk 'guest'; haāk-t'eng 'living-room'

sai-shan-fōng\*, a.f. sai-shan-fōng sai 'to wash, clean';  
shan 'body'; sai shan 'to take a bath'; sai-shan-fōng\* 'bath-  
room'

hōk-haaû school, institute, academy

wan-tsaâp wan 'to review, lukewarm'; tsaâp 'to practice,  
exercise'; wan-tsaâp 'to review (lessons)'

kung-fòh lessons, school work

in-haû afterwards, later, then, by and by; a.f.: in-chi-  
haû

faân-t'eng faân 'cooked rice, meal'; faân t'eng 'dining  
room'

shîk faân shîk 'to eat'; shîk faân 'to eat a meal, eat  
food, eat, eat rice'



INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 5

ORAL MATERIAL

Cheung T'aai-T'aai\*: Â-Chim, Â-Chim! Ngõh po-kwán t'ong, chué-shûk faân, ch'aaú-uên ts'oi, ching-hó shùng là. Faaí ti ch'ut lai faân-t'eng shîk faân la! Â-nuĩ\*, à-nuĩ\*: Neĩ faaí ti huĩ kiù pā-pa t'ūng kōh-koh lai shîk faân là!

Â-Tsai: Mā-ma, tsô mi-yě à? Neĩ kiù mooí-mooí\* kiù ngõh tsô mi-yě à?

T'aai-T'aai\*: Ngõh kiù neĩ yâp huĩ shue-fōng\* shuè kiù pā-pa ch'ut lai shîk faân à.

Â-Tsai: Â-ma, pā-pa fân-cheûk kaaú pòh, ngõh m-seúng kiù séng k'uĩ?

T'aai-T'aai\*: M-kán-iù. Pā-pa ying-koi shîk faân, wan-tsaâp kung-fòh sin, ín-chi-haû chì hoh-ĩ fân kaaú.

Â-Tsai: Â-pa, heĩ shan là! shîk faân là!

Cheung Sheung-Sz: M! Oh! tak là! Neĩ yâp lai la. Ngõh heĩ shan là. Ngõh huĩ sai-shan-fōng\* shuè sin, ín-haû chì ch'ut huĩ faân-t'eng shîk faân.

Â-Tsai: Mā-ma, à-mooí\* ne? K'uĩ hai pin shuè à?

T'aai-T'aai\*: Â-tsai, à-mooí\*hai ni shuè là. Neĩ m-shai kiù k'uĩ là!

## INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 5

Mrs. Cheung: Jim, I have already prepared the soup, the rice, the vegetable, and the food. Hurry up and come to the dining room to have supper!

Daughter, hurry up and call your father and brother to come for supper!

Junior: Mother, what happened? You asked sister to call me? What happened?

Mrs: I want you to go to the study and call your father to come to have supper.

Junior: Mother, Father is asleep. I don't want to wake him up.

Mrs: Why don't you? Your father should have his supper and do his homework before he goes to bed.

Junior: Father, wake up! Dinner is ready!

M/Sgt Cheung: All right! You may come in. I am getting up. Let me go to the bathroom first before I come to the dining room to eat.

Junior: Mother, where is sister? Where is she?

Mrs: She is here, son. You don't have to look for her.

張太太\*：亞占，亞占！我煲滾湯，煮熟飯，炒完菜，整好餸啦。快啲出黎食飯啦！

亞女\*，亞女\*！你快啲去叫爸爸同哥哥黎食飯啦！

亞仔：媽媽，做乜野呀？你叫妹妹叫我做乜野呀？

張太太\*：我叫你入去書房處叫爸爸出黎食飯呀。

亞仔：亞媽，爸爸瞓着覺，我唔想叫醒佢？

張太太\*：唔緊要，爸爸應該食飯，溫習功課先，然後至可以瞓覺。

亞仔：亞爸，起身啦！食飯啦！

張上士：唔！啊！得啦！你入黎啦。我起身啦。我去洗身房處先，然後至出去飯廳食飯。

亞仔：媽媽，亞妹呢？佢喺邊處呀？

張太太\*：亞仔，亞妹喺呢處啦。你唔使叫佢啦。

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 5

READING MATERIAL

張太太<sup>\*</sup>喺<sup>\*</sup>廚房<sup>\*</sup>處<sup>\*</sup>煮<sup>\*</sup>飯<sup>\*</sup>。張上士<sup>\*</sup>喺<sup>\*</sup>書房<sup>\*</sup>處<sup>\*</sup>。  
張太太<sup>\*</sup>煮<sup>\*</sup>熟<sup>\*</sup>飯<sup>\*</sup>，煲<sup>\*</sup>滾<sup>\*</sup>湯<sup>\*</sup>，炒<sup>\*</sup>完<sup>\*</sup>菜<sup>\*</sup>，  
處<sup>\*</sup>睇<sup>\*</sup>覺<sup>\*</sup>餸<sup>\*</sup>。  
處<sup>\*</sup>睇<sup>\*</sup>好<sup>\*</sup>。

張上士<sup>\*</sup>同<sup>\*</sup>亞仔<sup>\*</sup>唔<sup>\*</sup>喺<sup>\*</sup>廚房<sup>\*</sup>處<sup>\*</sup>。張太太<sup>\*</sup>叫<sup>\*</sup>亞女<sup>\*</sup>快<sup>\*</sup>啲<sup>\*</sup>去<sup>\*</sup>  
佢<sup>\*</sup>地<sup>\*</sup>出<sup>\*</sup>黎<sup>\*</sup>。張太太<sup>\*</sup>亞女<sup>\*</sup>係<sup>\*</sup>妹<sup>\*</sup>妹<sup>\*</sup>，亞仔<sup>\*</sup>哥<sup>\*</sup>  
佢<sup>\*</sup>叫<sup>\*</sup>係<sup>\*</sup>哥<sup>\*</sup>。亞女<sup>\*</sup>先<sup>\*</sup>去<sup>\*</sup>食<sup>\*</sup>飯<sup>\*</sup>。  
佢<sup>\*</sup>叫<sup>\*</sup>係<sup>\*</sup>哥<sup>\*</sup>。

亞仔<sup>\*</sup>入<sup>\*</sup>去<sup>\*</sup>書房<sup>\*</sup>處<sup>\*</sup>叫<sup>\*</sup>醒<sup>\*</sup>爸爸<sup>\*</sup>。佢<sup>\*</sup>係<sup>\*</sup>溫習<sup>\*</sup>功課<sup>\*</sup>；  
處<sup>\*</sup>睇<sup>\*</sup>，亞仔<sup>\*</sup>要<sup>\*</sup>叫<sup>\*</sup>醒<sup>\*</sup>佢<sup>\*</sup>。佢<sup>\*</sup>係<sup>\*</sup>溫習<sup>\*</sup>功課<sup>\*</sup>，所以<sup>\*</sup>  
溫習<sup>\*</sup>完<sup>\*</sup>功課<sup>\*</sup>，佢<sup>\*</sup>係<sup>\*</sup>溫習<sup>\*</sup>功課<sup>\*</sup>，所以<sup>\*</sup>  
溫習<sup>\*</sup>完<sup>\*</sup>功課<sup>\*</sup>，佢<sup>\*</sup>係<sup>\*</sup>溫習<sup>\*</sup>功課<sup>\*</sup>，所以<sup>\*</sup>

張上士<sup>\*</sup>起<sup>\*</sup>身<sup>\*</sup>去<sup>\*</sup>洗<sup>\*</sup>身<sup>\*</sup>廳<sup>\*</sup>飯<sup>\*</sup>。佢<sup>\*</sup>叫<sup>\*</sup>亞仔<sup>\*</sup>入<sup>\*</sup>去<sup>\*</sup>書房<sup>\*</sup>處<sup>\*</sup>。  
佢<sup>\*</sup>話<sup>\*</sup>，佢<sup>\*</sup>要<sup>\*</sup>先<sup>\*</sup>出<sup>\*</sup>去<sup>\*</sup>洗<sup>\*</sup>身<sup>\*</sup>廳<sup>\*</sup>飯<sup>\*</sup>。  
然<sup>\*</sup>後<sup>\*</sup>至<sup>\*</sup>可<sup>\*</sup>以<sup>\*</sup>出<sup>\*</sup>去<sup>\*</sup>洗<sup>\*</sup>身<sup>\*</sup>廳<sup>\*</sup>飯<sup>\*</sup>。

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 5

QUESTIONS

Cheung T'aaí-T'aaí\* hái ch'uē-fōng\* tsô mi-yě à?

Cheung Sheûng-Sz hái pin shuê fân kaaû à?

Cheung T'aaí-T'aaí\* chué shûk faân, po-kwán t'ong, ch'aaú-uēn ts'oi, ching-hó shùng; hái m-hái à?

Cheung T'aaí-T'aaí\*, chué-shûk faân. K'uĩ seúng k'uĩ-teí hái pin shuê shik faân à?

K'uĩ kiù pin-kòh huí kiù pin-kòh ch'ut lai shik faân à?

À-nuĩ\* hái mooí-mooí\* m-hái à? À-tsaí hái m-hái kòh-koh à?

À-nuĩ\* sin huí kiù pin-kòh à?

À-nuĩ\* kiù k'uĩ à-koh kiù pin-kòh ch'ut lai shik faân à?

À-tsaí yâp huí pin shuê kiù pā-pa à?

K'uĩ pā-pa hái shue-fōng\* shuê tsô mi-yě à?

À-tsaí seúng m-seúng kiù séng k'uĩ pā-pa à?

À-tsaí m-seúng kiù séng k'uĩ pā-pa. K'uĩ mā-ma wā mi-yě à?

Wan-tsaâp-uēn kung-fòh, in-chi-haû hoh-í tsô mi-yě à?

Cheung Sheûng-Sz heí shan. K'uĩ wā, k'uĩ iù sin huí pin shuê à?

K'uĩ iù huí-uēn pin shuê, in-chi-haû chí hoh-í ch'ut huí faân-t'eng shik faân à?

## INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 5

## VOCABULARY AND NOTES

po-kwán t'ong po 'to heat, boil, make, cook, steam, prepare'; kwán 'to boil, boiled, boiling'; t'ong 'soup'; po t'ong 'to make soup, to prepare soup'; po faân 'to cook rice, to steam rice'; po-kwán t'ong 'to have the soup prepared, heated, or made'

chué-shûk faân chué 'to heat, boil, make, cook, steam, prepare'; shûk 'cooked, well done, prepared, ripe, familiar'; chué-shûk 'to cook and have it well cooked, well done, well prepared', but it doesn't apply to liquid food, we can never say chué-shûk t'ong; chué-shûk faân 'to have the rice well cooked'

ch'aaú-uên ts'oi ch'aaú 'to fry quickly and with little oil, scramble, roast, grill'; but it does not apply to a big piece of meat or fish, so we can not say ch'aaú steak, ch'aaú fish, etc. Uên by itself means 'to finish, be through, be over'; when attached after a verb it means the completion of the action concerned, so it is a perfective verb. In this case, ch'aaú-uên means the frying is finished. Ts'oi 'vegetable, food, dish of food, variety of food'. Ch'aaú-uên ts'oi 'finish in preparing the vegetable'.

ching-hô shùng ching 'to prepare, make, set in order, put right, repair, adjust'. Hô by itself means 'good, okay, all right, very'. Same as uên, when attached after a verb, it implies the completion of the action concerned. In this case, ching-hô implies 'the completion of the preparation'. Shùng 'cooked or uncooked food, dish of food'. Ching-hô shùng 'finished in preparing the food'.

faai ti faai 'quick, fast, rapid, swift, soon, to hurry'; ti 'more, ...er'; faai ti 'faster, be in a hurry, to speed up'

ch'ut lai ch'ut by itself means 'out', it may mean 'to go out' or 'to come out'; whether it means 'to go out' or 'come out' depends on the directional verb immediately following lai 'to come, to, in order to'.

ch'ut lai 'to come out'.

kiù to call, to be called, to summon, to mean (by), is meant (by), to order (in a restaurant, etc), tell (to do something), make, cause to

pā-pa pa a familiar way of calling 'father'; sometimes we add the prefix A, as A-pa which also means 'father' or 'daddy'. Sometimes we duplicate the pa forming pā-pa, in which the first pā should be pronounced as pā instead of pa.

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 5

kōh-koh koh 'elder brother'. Same as pā-pa, we can either add the prefix Ā forming Ā-koh or duplicate the koh forming kōh-koh in which the first koh should be pronounced as kōh instead of koh.

mā-ma ma 'mother'; mā-ma 'mother, mom'; Ā-ma 'mother, mom'

mooi-mooi\* mooi\* 'younger sister'; mooi-mooi\* 'younger sister'; Ā-mooi\* 'younger sister'

yâp hui yâp by itself means 'in' which may mean 'to go in' or 'to come in'; whether it means 'to go in' or 'come in' depends on the directional verb immediately following hui 'to go, to, in order to'; yâp hui 'to go in'; yâp lai 'to come in'; ch'ut hui 'to go out'; ch'ut lai 'to come out'.

fân-cheûk kaaû fân synonym of fân-kaaû meaning 'to sleep, to lie down, to have a rest on the bed'. Cheûk, an auxiliary verb implying a completed action, 'right, to order, call, sign of imperative'. Fân-cheûk 'to fall asleep'. Fân-cheûk kaaû is the synonym of fân-cheûk meaning 'to fall asleep'; note that the cheûk has to be placed in between the fân and kaaû, thus, fân-cheûk kaaû.

kiù séng kiù 'to call, name, yell, call aloud'; séng 'to wake up, become sober, to be aroused, to startle, to recover from a coma'. Kiù séng 'to wake up'; generally, it takes object which has to be placed after the séng instead of kiù, thus, kiù séng k'uĩ, never kiù k'uĩ séng.

m-kán-iù never mind, that's all right, doesn't matter, not important, not serious

ying-koi 'ought to, should'. In literary and newspaper Chinese, the abbreviation of ying-koi is ying or koi. The negative form of ying-koi is m-ying-koi, from which the expression m-koi was derived which means 'to thank' or 'ought not' literally.

sin prior to, first, foremost, ahead, previous, before, former, deceased (literary)

chi not until, until, till, then, only then, for the first time, begin to, German: erst. It is used to precede an adjectival verb forming the superlative degree, thus, chi faai means 'fastest, the fastest'.

## INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 5

hóh-ĩ may, can, able, an expression of assent--very well, that will do, etc.

heĩ shan heĩ 'to rise'; shan 'body'; heĩ shan 'to get up'.  
Heĩ shan is a verb-object construction. If we want to include tense in heĩ shan, the auxiliary verb has to be placed immediately after the heĩ.

tak okay! all right! can do, will do, can, able, descriptive compliments, to get.



INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 6

ORAL MATERIAL

Cheung T'aaí-T'aaí\*: Á-nuǐ\*, neǐ pong mā-ma la. Tak mà?

Á-Nuǐ\*: Ōh, mā-ma, neǐ seúng ngōh t'ūng neǐ tsô mi-yě ne?

T'aaí-T'aaí\*: Neǐ t'ūng mā-ma paaí t'oi\*, í í la.

Á-Nuǐ\*: Neǐ seúng yūng pin ti t'oi\* pò, ts'aan-kan, yūng pin ti oón, tǐp\* à?

T'aaí-T'aaí\*: Kóh cheung t'oi\* pò t'ūng ts'aan-kan tak là. Neǐ ning ti to, ch'a, oón, tǐp\*, ch'i-kang, faai-tsǔ, pooi, tǐp\*, poh-lei pooi hui t'oi\* shuè la.

Á-Nuǐ\*: Ngōh iù kōh-koh pong ngōh chí tak pòh.

T'aaí-T'aaí\*: Kóm, neǐ kiù kōh-koh la. Neǐ t'ūng kōh-koh t'ūng mā-ma paaí t'oi\* la.

Á-Nuǐ\*: Kōh-koh, lai ni shuè à! Mā-ma iù ngōh-teǐ pong k'ui à. Ngōh-teǐ iù paaí t'oi\* shík faân à.

Á-Tsai: Á-mooí\*, táng ngōh ning to, ch'a, oón, tǐp\*, ch'i-kang, faai-tsǔ. Neǐ cha pooi, tǐp\*, poh-lei pooi la.

T'aaí-T'aaí\*: Siú-sam à!

Á-Tsai: Tak là. M-shai taam-sam, mā-ma. Ngōh-teǐ paaí-uēn t'oi\* là.

T'aaí-T'aaí\*: Kóm ngōh hoi faân là.

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 6

Mrs. Cheung: Will you give mother a hand?

Daughter: Yes, mother. What do you want me to do?

Mrs: You may help mother set the table and move the chairs.

Daughter: Which tablecloth, napkins, bowls and plates do you wish to use?

Mrs: That tablecloth and those napkins will do. You take these knives, forks, bowls, plates, spoons, chopsticks, cups, saucers, and glasses to the table.

Daughter: I have to have help from brother.

Mrs: Well, you go to get him, and you two will set the table for mother.

Daughter: Brother, come here! Mother needs our help. We have to set the table for supper.

Junior: Sister, let me bring in the knives, forks, bowls, plates, spoons and chopsticks. You hold the cups, saucers, and glasses.

Mrs: Be careful!

Junior: Oh, we will, Mother. Don't worry.

Daughter: We have finished setting the table.

Mrs: I'll serve the food.

- 張太太\*：亞女\*，你幫媽媽\*啦，得嗎？
- 亞女\*：啊，媽媽\*，你想我同你做乜野呢？
- 張太太\*：你同媽媽\*擺枱\*，移椅啦。
- 亞女\*：你想用邊啲枱布\*，餐巾\*，用邊啲碗\*，碟\*呀？
- 張太太\*：嗰張枱布\*同餐巾\*得啦，你擰啲刀\*，叉\*，碗\*，碟\*，匙羹\*，筷子\*，杯碟\*，玻璃杯\*去枱處\*啦。
- 亞女\*：我要哥哥\*幫我至得囉。
- 張太太\*：敢，你叫哥哥\*啦，你同哥哥\*同媽媽\*擺枱\*啦。
- 亞女\*：哥哥\*，黎呢處呀！媽媽\*要我地幫佢呀，我地要擺枱\*食飯呀。
- 亞仔\*：亞妹\*，等我擰刀\*，叉\*，碗\*，碟\*，匙羹\*，筷子\*，你揸杯碟\*，玻璃杯\*啦。
- 張太太\*：小心呀！
- 亞仔\*：得啦，唔使擔心，媽媽\*，我地擺完枱\*啦。
- 張太太\*：敢我開飯啦。

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 6

READING MATERIAL

張太太<sup>\*</sup>喺<sup>\*</sup>廚房<sup>\*</sup>處<sup>\*</sup>煮<sup>\*</sup>飯<sup>\*</sup>，整<sup>\*</sup>餸<sup>\*</sup>，煲<sup>\*</sup>湯<sup>\*</sup>。  
佢<sup>\*</sup>煮<sup>\*</sup>好<sup>\*</sup>飯<sup>\*</sup>，整<sup>\*</sup>完<sup>\*</sup>餸<sup>\*</sup>，煲<sup>\*</sup>滾<sup>\*</sup>湯<sup>\*</sup>。但<sup>\*</sup>係<sup>\*</sup>佢<sup>\*</sup>地<sup>\*</sup>要<sup>\*</sup>  
擺<sup>\*</sup>好<sup>\*</sup>枱<sup>\*</sup>先<sup>\*</sup>，然<sup>\*</sup>之<sup>\*</sup>後<sup>\*</sup>至<sup>\*</sup>可<sup>\*</sup>以<sup>\*</sup>食<sup>\*</sup>飯<sup>\*</sup>。

張太太<sup>\*</sup>叫<sup>\*</sup>亞<sup>\*</sup>女<sup>\*</sup>幫<sup>\*</sup>佢<sup>\*</sup>擺<sup>\*</sup>枱<sup>\*</sup>移<sup>\*</sup>椅<sup>\*</sup>，同<sup>\*</sup>擰<sup>\*</sup>啲<sup>\*</sup>  
刀<sup>\*</sup>，叉<sup>\*</sup>，碗<sup>\*</sup>，碟<sup>\*</sup>，匙<sup>\*</sup>羹<sup>\*</sup>，筷子<sup>\*</sup>，杯<sup>\*</sup>碟<sup>\*</sup>，玻<sup>\*</sup>  
璃<sup>\*</sup>杯<sup>\*</sup>去<sup>\*</sup>個<sup>\*</sup>張<sup>\*</sup>枱<sup>\*</sup>處<sup>\*</sup>。個<sup>\*</sup>張<sup>\*</sup>枱<sup>\*</sup>有<sup>\*</sup>枱<sup>\*</sup>布<sup>\*</sup>同<sup>\*</sup>餐<sup>\*</sup>巾<sup>\*</sup>。

亞<sup>\*</sup>女<sup>\*</sup>要<sup>\*</sup>亞<sup>\*</sup>仔<sup>\*</sup>幫<sup>\*</sup>佢<sup>\*</sup>。亞<sup>\*</sup>女<sup>\*</sup>要<sup>\*</sup>亞<sup>\*</sup>仔<sup>\*</sup>幫<sup>\*</sup>佢<sup>\*</sup>擺<sup>\*</sup>  
枱<sup>\*</sup>。亞<sup>\*</sup>仔<sup>\*</sup>擰<sup>\*</sup>刀<sup>\*</sup>，叉<sup>\*</sup>，碗<sup>\*</sup>，碟<sup>\*</sup>，匙<sup>\*</sup>羹<sup>\*</sup>，筷子<sup>\*</sup>。  
亞<sup>\*</sup>女<sup>\*</sup>揸<sup>\*</sup>杯<sup>\*</sup>碟<sup>\*</sup>，同<sup>\*</sup>玻<sup>\*</sup>璃<sup>\*</sup>杯<sup>\*</sup>。

張太太<sup>\*</sup>担<sup>\*</sup>心<sup>\*</sup>佢<sup>\*</sup>地<sup>\*</sup>唔<sup>\*</sup>小<sup>\*</sup>心<sup>\*</sup>，所<sup>\*</sup>以<sup>\*</sup>叫<sup>\*</sup>佢<sup>\*</sup>地<sup>\*</sup>  
小<sup>\*</sup>心<sup>\*</sup>啲<sup>\*</sup>。亞<sup>\*</sup>仔<sup>\*</sup>叫<sup>\*</sup>媽<sup>\*</sup>媽<sup>\*</sup>唔<sup>\*</sup>使<sup>\*</sup>担<sup>\*</sup>心<sup>\*</sup>。

亞<sup>\*</sup>仔<sup>\*</sup>同<sup>\*</sup>亞<sup>\*</sup>女<sup>\*</sup>擺<sup>\*</sup>完<sup>\*</sup>枱<sup>\*</sup>。張太太<sup>\*</sup>開<sup>\*</sup>飯<sup>\*</sup>。

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 6

QUESTIONS

Cheung T'aai-T'aai\* hai ch'ue-fong\* tsô mi-yě à?

Cheung T'aai-T'aai\* chue-hô faân. Taân-hai k'ui-tei iù tsô mi-yě sin, in-chi-hau chi hoh-i shik faân à?

Cheung T'aai-T'aai\* kiù à-nui\* pong k'ui tsô mi-yě à?

Kóh cheung t'oi\* yau mô t'oi\*-pò t'ung ts'aan-kan à?

À-nui\* iù m-iù à-tsaí pong k'ui tsô yě à?

À-nui\* iù à-tsaí pong k'ui tsô mi-yě à?

À-tsaí ning mi-yě à?

À-nui\* cha mi-yě à?

Cheung T'aai-T'aai\* taam m-taam-sam k'ui-tei à?

Cheung T'aai-T'aai\* kiù k'ui-tei siú-sam ti. À-tsaí wâ mi-yě à?

À-tsaí t'ung À-nui\* paaí-uên t'oi\*. Cheung T'aai-T'aai\* tsô mi-yě à?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 6

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

pong to help, assist, aid, defend, for, a group

paaí t'oi\* paaí 'to set in order, place, spread, display, wave to and fro, shake, move'; t'oi\* 'table, desk'; AN: cheung; paaí t'oi\* 'to set a table'

í í í 'to shift, move across, pull, transform, transmit; í 'chair, couch, seat'; í í 'to move chair, to put chair in proper order, to pull chair out from a table'; í t'oi\* 'to move table, to move table in proper order'

yûng to use, utilize, with, by means of; yûng ch'ue 'usefulness, use, function'

t'oi\* pò t'oi\* 'table, desk'; pò 'cloth, cotton cloth, linen, shirting'; t'oi\* pò 'tablecloth'; AN: cheung

ts'aan kan ts'aan 'meal', it can be Chung-Kwòk ts'aan, Yât-Poón ts'aan, Mei-Kwòk ts'aan, etc, or tsó-tsaan, 'breakfast', ng-ts'aan 'lunch', maan-ts'aan 'supper'; kan 'napkin, towel, etc'; ts'aan kan 'napkin'; shaú kan 'hand towel'; shaú-kan-tsaí 'handkerchief'; the AN of kan is t'iu

ning 'to take with hand, to hold with hand, to carry with hand'; only applicable to inanimate things, never say ning yân but ning yé

to 'knife'; it can be all kinds of knives depending on the qualifier that precedes the to.

ch'a 'fork'; can also be used as verb, such as ch'a kòh ti shùng meaning 'to pick up the food with fork'

oón 'bowl'; it may be 'rice bowl, soup bowl, etc' depending on the qualifier that precedes the oón, such as: faân oón 'rice bowl', t'ong oón 'soup bowl'; as a general practice, oón means 'rice bowl'. AN: chèk, kòh

típ, típ\* 'plate, small dish, saucer'; it may be shùng típ\* 'food plate' or ch'ā-pooi típ\* 'saucer'. AN: chèk and kòh

ch'í-kang 'spoon'; t'ong kang 'soup spoon'; ch'ā kang 'teaspoon'; AN: chi and chèk

faai-tsú 'chopsticks'; AN: sheung or tui 'pair' and chi for 'one' generally; cha faai-tsú 'to hold chopsticks, to use chopsticks'

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 6

pooi 'cup, tumbler, glass'; AN: chèk, kòh; ch'ā pooi 'tea cup'

poh-lei pooi poh-lei 'glass, plastic'; pooi 'cup, tumbler, glass'; poh-lei pooi 'tumbler, glass'

...chì tak 'only then will it do, only that will it do, so that, only...will it do, it will be necessary that...'. Note the position of chì tak which is at the end of a phrase or sentence.

táng 'to let, wait'; táng ngōh 'let me, wait for me'; táng -hã 'to wait a minute'

cha 'to hold by hand, to carry by hand'

siú-sam 'careful, cautious'; siú-sam! 'watch out!' 'look out!'

taam-sam to worry, be anxious, alarmed

hoi faân hoi 'to open, operate, start'; hoi faân 'to start serving meal, dinner is served'

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 7

ORAL MATERIAL

Cheung Sheung-Sz: Mă-Lei, ngõh-tei kam-maän shik mi-yě à? Shik  
T'õng-ts'aan à, yik-waäk shik Sai-ts'aan ne?

Cheung T'aai-T'aai\*: Ngõh-tei ts'am-yat shik Sai-ts'aan, kam-  
maän shik T'õng-ts'aan.

Sheung-Sz: Shik mi-yě T'õng-ts'aan à? Uet ts'oi á, Oô ts'oi a,  
Ch'uen ts'oi a, yik-waäk King ts'oi à?

T'aai-T'aai\*: Tong-in\* hai Uet ts'oi la. Chung shai kóng kè\*.

Sheung-Sz: Yau mi-yě shik à?

T'aai-T'aai\*: Ts'oi t'ong, ngaü-yük, chue-yük, kai, ts'oi.

Sheung-Sz: Ngõh yau t'õ-ngõh, yau keng-hòt.

T'aai-T'aai\*: Kóm, ngõh-tei shik faän là.

Sheung-Sz: Ti faän chue-tak yau heung yau hó-shik. Ti t'ong  
po-tak yau t'im yau hó-yám. Ti shung ching-tak yau hó meí  
yau hó shau-shai. Mă-Lei, nei chan hai sha-tak là.

À-Tsai: Hai à. Pā-pa kóng-tak ngaam là. Ngõh-tei tak kóm hó  
kè mã-ma, yau kóm hó kè shung. Ngõh-tei shik-paau ti chi  
tak à.



## INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 7

M/Sgt Cheung: Mary, what are we going to have for supper tonight, Chinese food or American food?

Mrs. Cheung: We had American food yesterday. We'll have Chinese food tonight.

M/Sgt: What kind of Chinese food are we going to have, Cantonese, Shanghaiese, Szechuenese, or Pekingese?

Mrs: Cantonese food, of course. Why do you have to ask?

M/Sgt: What do we have?

Mrs: We have vegetable soup, beef, pork, chicken, and vegetable.

M/Sgt: I'm hungry and thirsty.

Mrs: If that's the case, we had better eat.

M/Sgt: Say! The rice is excellent. The soup is superb. The food is delicious and well-prepared. Mary, you are marvelous; you know all the knacks.

Junior: Father is absolutely right. We have a wonderful mother. The food is superb. Let's eat plenty.

張上士：瑪利，我地今晚食乜野呀？食唐  
 張太太：餐我地尋日抑或食西餐？今晚食唐餐。  
 上士：食乜野呀，唐，抑或京菜呀？  
 太太：當然係野食呀？  
 太太：當有菜湯，牛肉，猪肉，雞，菜。  
 上士：我又肚餓又頸渴。  
 太太：敢我地食飯啦。  
 上士：啲飯煮得又香又好食。啲餸真係好  
 甜又好飲，你講得啱。  
 亞仔：勢係呀，爸爸，媽媽，有咁好嘅餸。  
 我地得咁好，我地食飽啲。

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 7

READING MATERIAL

張太太煮好飯，整完餸。亞仔，亞女擺好枱。張太太開飯。

有地的係牛肉，今晚係牛。係今晚係牛肉，豬肉，雞肉，雞，菜……

今日食西餐，今晚食川菜。今晚食唐餐，今晚食唐餐。今晚食唐餐……

張上士又肚餓又頸渴。佢地想快啲食。張太太叫佢地黎食飯啦！

張太太唔祇係一位好太太，好嘅媽媽，而且又係一位好會煮飯同整餸嘅女人。今晚啲飯煮得又香又好食，啲湯煲得又甜又好飲。啲餸整得又好味又好手勢。佢真係要得啦！

張上士有咁好嘅太太，亞仔同亞女有咁好嘅媽媽，今晚又有咁好嘅餸。唔怪得佢地都咁想食張太太整嘅餸，食得咁飽啦。

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 7

QUESTIONS

K'ui-tei ts'am-yat shik mi-yě ts'aan\* à?

K'ui-tei ts'am-yat shik Sai ts'aan. Kam-yat shik mi-yě à?

T'ōng-ts'oi yaũ pin ti à?

K'ui-tei kam-maãn shik kè haĩ Uêt ts'oi, yik-waãk haĩ Oô ts'oi, Ch'uen ts'oi, King ts'oi à?

Kóm, k'ui-tei kam-maãn shik ti mi-yě shùng à?

Cheung Sheũng-Sz t'ō-ngôh mà, kêng-hòt mà?

Cheung T'aai-T'aai\* haĩ m-haĩ yat-wai\* hó t'aai-t'aai\*, t'ũng hó kè mã-ma à?

Cheung T'aai-T'aai\* ching sùng ching-tak hó m-hó à?

Kam-maãn ti t'ong po-tak t'im m-t'im à, hó m-hó-yám à?

Ti shùng ne?

Kam-maãn ti shùng ching-tak kóm hó meĩ, kóm hó shaú-shai; kóm, k'ui-tei to hó seung shik, shik-tak hó paaú kà la?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 7

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

kam-maän kam 'time when (TW), now, nowadays (lit.)'; maän 'time when and how long, night, evening, late (lit)'; kam-maän 'tonight, this night, this evening'

T'ōng-ts'aan T'ōng 'Chinese in general, T'ang Dynasty (618-906)'; T'ōng-ts'aan 'Chinese food, Chinese meal, Chinese cooking'

yik-waâk yik 'disjunctive question, or question requesting a choice of alternatives, or (lit), to suppress (lit)'; waâk AF: waâk-ché; yik-waâk 'disjunctive question'; but in direct statement, 'or' will always be translated by waâk or waâk-ché; yik-waâk 'disjunctive question'

Sai-ts'aan sai 'west, western, occidental, foreign'; Sai-ts'aan 'western food, occidental food, American food'

ts'ām-yât ts'ām 'to search, find, look for'; yât 'day, date, day time, time, sun, sunshine'; ts'ām-yât 'yesterday'; ts'ām-maän 'last night, last evening'; kam-yât 'today, this day'; AF of ts'ām-yât: tsök-yât, k'ām-yât; AF of ts'ām-maän: tsök-maän, k'ām-maän

Uêt ts'oi Uêt alternate and briefer form of Kwóng-Tung (Canton); ts'oi 'cooked food, dish of food, vegetable'; Uêt ts'oi 'Cantonese food, food of Kwangtung Province'

Oê ts'oi Oê abbreviation of Sheûng-Hoi (Shanghai); Oê ts'oi 'Shanghaiese food'

Ch'uen ts'oi Ch'uen abbreviation of Sei-Ch'uen (Szechuen Province), 'stream, creek, to station (lit)'; Ch'uen ts'oi 'Szechuenese food'

King ts'oi King abbreviations of Pak-King (Peking), Naäm-King (Nanking), king-shing (national capital, king-to (national capital) and kwök-to (national capital)'; generally, it means 'Peking' or 'national capital'. King ts'oi 'Pekingese food'

tong-in, tong-in\* tong abbreviation of ying-tong meaning 'ought to'; AF of ying-koi; ying and koi means 'ought to'; in 'however (lit), to agree (lit), yes (lit)'; tong-in 'of course, certainly, definitely, out of the question, undoubtedly'; if tong-in is used alone, it is usually followed by la, thus tong-in la! 'of course!'

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 7

chûng shai kóng kè\* chûng 'still, yet, moreover, again, else, too, and'; it indicates that something has happened and may possibly happen again; shai 'needs to use'; chûng shai 'still need, still require'; kè 'subordinating or modifying particle', 'of', 's', 'that which'; chûng shai kóng kè\* 'of course, no explanation is necessary', it implies 'it is definitely so, bound to be that way, doesn't have to say, it goes without saying, needless to say'

ngau-yûk ngau 'ox, cow, cattle, tough'; yûk 'meat, flesh';  
ngau-yûk 'beef'

chue-yûk chue 'pig, hog, fatty, stupid'; chue yûk 'pork'

kai 'chicken, hen, prostitute (vulgar)'

t'õ-ngôh t'õ 'stomach, abdomen'; ngôh 'hungry, hunger, gluttony'; t'õ-ngôh 'hungry, hunger'; paau 'satiated, stomach is filled'; t'õ-paau 'satiated, stomach is filled, filled'

kéng-hòt kéng 'neck'; hòt 'thirsty, thirst, longing for, anxious'; kéng-hòt 'thirsty, thirst'

chué-tak yau heung yau hó-shik heung 'adjectival verb (AV), delicious, fragrant, incense'; hó-shik 'AV, delicious, tasty'; yau...yau... 'both...and...'; yau heung yau hó-shik 'well-cooked and delicious'. The construction chué-tak yau heung yau hó-shik can mean either 'cooked well and delicious' or 'can cook well and delicious'. In the first case, tak yau heung yau hó-shik is a potential complement. In the second case, where tak yau heung yau hó-shik describes the result of chué, the complement is a 'descriptive complement'. The negative and the (A-not -A) interrogative forms of potential and descriptive constructions are as follows:

Pos. Pot.: chué-tak hó 'can cook well'

Pos. Descr.: chué-tak hó 'cooked well'

Neg. Pot.: chué m-hó 'cannot cook well'

m-chué-tak hó 'cannot cook well'

Neg. Descr.: chué-tak m-hó 'cooked badly'

Interr. Pot. chué m-chué-tak hó? 'can or cannot cook well?'

Interr. Descr. chué-tak hó m-hó? 'does or does not cook well?'

t'im 'sweet, tasty, tastes good'; ti t'ong hó t'im 'the soup is very tasty'; ti péng hó t'im 'the cake is very sweet'

## INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 7

hó-yám yám 'to drink'; hó-yám 'good to drink, good';  
t'ong hó-yám 'the soup is tasty'

hó-meî meî 'taste, variety of food, smell'; hó-meî 'good taste, tastes good, delicious'; ti shùng hó-meî 'the food is tasty'

shaú-shai 'workmanship, skill, gesticulation'; hó shaú-shai 'skillful'; generally, hó shaú-shai pertains to cooking.

chan haî chan 'true, real, genuine, authentic, unfeigned';  
chan haî 'really, is really, it is true'

shá-tak AR shaî tak 'did a good job, to know the job and do it well, to know how, it works'; neî chan haî shá-tak or neî chan haî shaî-tak 'you really did a good job', 'you really know how', 'you are smart', 'you are great'

ngaam 'right, correct, suitable, fit'; neî kóng-tak ngaam 'what you said is right'; ni kîn shaam hó ngaam ngòh 'this coat fits me well'; ngaam-ngaam 'just, just as, just now'

kòm 'so, to such a degree' (as distinguished from kóm 'so, in such a manner')

kè When added after a noun or pronoun, it makes it the 'sign of possessive', such as, ngòh kè 'my, mine', hòk-shaang kè 'student's...'; when added after a verb, it makes it the 'particle (generally, past)', such as, sé kè 'written', kóng kè 'spoken', chí tsò kè 'made of paper'; when added after an AV, it becomes the 'subordinating or modifying particle'

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 8

ORAL MATERIAL

Cheung T'aaì-T'aaì\*: Ǻ-Chim, ti sai-man-tsaí ĩ-king fàn-yâp  
kaaù. Neĩ chũng meĩ tũk-uēn shue, chũng meĩ tsô-heĩ neĩ  
kè kung-fòh Ǻ?

Cheung Sheũng-Sz̄: Meĩ à, Mã-Leĩ. Ngõh chũng tsô-kán à. Ti  
shue yaũ toh yaũ naãn. Ti kung-fòh yaũ sham yaũ m̄-yũng-ĩ.  
Ngõh uēt tũk uēt san-foó, uēt hõk uēt kaan-naãn, to m̄-chi  
tĩm-suèn-hó t'im.

T'aaì-T'aaì\*: M̄-shaĩ paì-ai, m̄-hó taam-sam. K'aũ-k'eĩ neĩ  
háng hõk, yat-tĩng ooĩ shĩng-kung kè.

Sheũng-Sz̄: Neĩ kóng-tak chan tui là. Chung-Kwòk wâ\* haĩ kòm  
kán-iù kè uē-ĩn, yaũ-k'eĩ-shĩ Kwóng-Tung wâ\* t'im, kòm p'ó-  
p'ĩn, kòm chũng-iù. Ngõh ĩ-ka yaũ kòm hó kè kei-ooĩ lai  
hõk, ngõh yat-tĩng iù nõ-lĩk ti hõk. M̄-haĩ Ǻ, tsaũ tui  
kwòk-ka tui m̄-chuē, tui yān tui m̄-chuē, tui tsz̄-keĩ yĩk  
tui m̄-chuē là.

T'aaì-T'aaì: Mõ-ts'òh là. Uē-kwóh neĩ hõk-tó ni chũng wâ\*, m̄-  
chĩ tui kwòk-ka yaũ kũng-hĩn, ĩ-ch'é tui-ue tsz̄-keĩ yĩk-to  
yaũ yik kà.



## INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 8

Mrs. Cheung: Jim, the children are already asleep. Have you finished your homework yet?

M/Sgt Cheung: Not yet, Mary. I'm still working on it. The lessons are lengthy and difficult. The more I study, the harder they are. I am all confused and just don't know what to do.

Mrs: You shouldn't feel bad and worry about it. As long as you are willing to learn, you will succeed in learning it.

M/Sgt: You are absolutely right. Chinese is such an important language, especially Cantonese which is so common and important. I have such a good opportunity to learn the language. I should put forth all my effort to study it. Otherwise, I can very well fail my country, disappoint my friends, and do myself an injustice.

Mrs: You are right. If you can master this language, not only does it mean a contribution to the country, but also an asset to yourself.

- 張太太\*：亞占，啲細位仔已經馴入覺。你重未讀完書，重未做起你嘅功課呀？
- 張上士：未呀，瑪利。我重做緊呀。啲書未呀多，又難。啲功課又深又唔容易。又我越讀越辛苦，越學越艱難，都唔知點算好漆。
- 太太\*：唔使攞點醫，唔好擔心。求其你肯學，一定得會成功嘅。
- 上士：你講得真對啦。中國話係咁緊要嘅，咁係話，咁好嘅機會黎呀，話咁重，要我一家對唔住，對人對唔住，對自已亦如對果你學倒呢種話，唔祇有錯對都。國家益。

但係張張上士同張太太<sup>\*</sup>嘅細仗仔已經<sup>\*</sup>入覺。但係張張上士同張太太<sup>\*</sup>嘅細仗仔已經<sup>\*</sup>入覺。但係張張上士同張太太<sup>\*</sup>嘅細仗仔已經<sup>\*</sup>入覺。但係張張上士同張太太<sup>\*</sup>嘅細仗仔已經<sup>\*</sup>入覺。

但係張張上士同張太太<sup>\*</sup>嘅細仗仔已經<sup>\*</sup>入覺。但係張張上士同張太太<sup>\*</sup>嘅細仗仔已經<sup>\*</sup>入覺。但係張張上士同張太太<sup>\*</sup>嘅細仗仔已經<sup>\*</sup>入覺。但係張張上士同張太太<sup>\*</sup>嘅細仗仔已經<sup>\*</sup>入覺。

張太太<sup>\*</sup>講得其東學果自己對廣東話亦對。張太太<sup>\*</sup>講得其東學果自己對廣東話亦對。張太太<sup>\*</sup>講得其東學果自己對廣東話亦對。張太太<sup>\*</sup>講得其東學果自己對廣東話亦對。

如果我們對自己亦都有益。如果我們對自己亦都有益。如果我們對自己亦都有益。如果我們對自己亦都有益。

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 8

QUESTIONS

Cheung Sheûng-Sz t'üng Cheung T'aai-T'aai\* kè sai-man-tsaí fàn-yâp kaaü meî à?

Cheung Sheûng-Sz ne? K'uï i-ka tsô-kán mi-yě à?

K'uï tük-uên shue meî à, tsô-heí k'uï kè kung-fòh meî à?

K'uï fàn-tak kaaü meî à?

Ti shue naän m-naän à? Ti kung-fòh yüng m-yüng-i à?

K'uï tük-tak san m-san-foó à?

Pin-wai\* kiù k'uï m-shai pai-ai, m-hó taam-sam à?

Uë-kwóh k'uï háng hôk, háng wan-tsaâp, k'uï ooí m-ooí shing-kung à?

Chung-Kwòk wâ\* kán m-kán-iù à?

Chung-Kwòk wâ\* hai yat-chúng hó kán-iù kè uë-in, yaü-k'ei-shí mi-yë wâ\* à?

Kóng Kwóng-Tung wâ\* kè Chung-Kwòk yän toh m-toh à?

Uë-kwóh hai kóm, Kwóng-Tung wâ\* hó p'ó-p'in, hó chûng-iù là, hai m-hai à?

Uë-kwóh ngö-h-teí yaü kei-ooí hôk Kwóng-Tung wâ\*, ngö-h-teí iù m-iù nõ-lík ti hôk à?

Uë-kwóh m-nõ-lík ti hôk tsaü tím à?

Uë-kwóh ngö-h-teí hôk-tó ni chúng wâ\*, ngö-h-teí tui kwòk-ka yaü mõ kùng-hin à, tui tsz-keí yaü mõ yik à?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 8

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

ĩ-king already, some time ago

fàn-yâp kaaù fàn kaaù 'to sleep, lie down'; yâp 'to enter, get in'; fàn-yâp kaaù 'to fall asleep, sound sleep'; Cf: fàn-cheûk kaaù IU5

meî a.f. meî-ts'āng 'not yet, not, have not (yet)'

tsô-heí heí 'to finish, complete, rise, begin, start to'; Cf: ch'aaú-uēn ts'oi IU5; tsô-heí kung-fòh has same meaning as tsô-uēn kung-fòh 'finished the homework'; meî tsô-uēn kung-fòh 'the homework hasn't been finished yet'

kán suffix for progressive action, -ing; tsô-kán 'doing, working'; chûng tsô-kán 'still working on it, still doing'; tight, tensed

toh much, many

naān hard, difficult, hard, not easy; antonym: yūng-î; yaû toh yaû naān 'too much and too difficult'; synonym: kaan-naān

sham profound, hard, difficult, not easy, deep; antonym: yūng-î 'easy'; ts'in 'easy, shallow'; ti kung-fòh hó sham 'the homework is very difficult', (difficult in the sense of degree of learning only and not otherwise.)

yūng-î easy, not difficult, simple; antonyms: naām, kaan-naān; synonym: ts'in

san-foó bitter, toilsome, distressing, suffering; tûk-tak hó san-foó 'having a terrible time in studying'

uêt...uêt... the more... the more..., the more...the...-er the...er.

uêt hôk uêt kaan-naān kaan-naān 'difficult, not easy, hard; synonym: naān; antonym: yūng-î; ngõh uêt hôk uêt kaan-naān 'the more I study, the harder it is'

m̄-chi chi 'to know, know about, have knowledge of' (Fr savoir, Germ. wissen): AF: chi-tò; m̄-chi, m̄-chi-tò 'do not know'

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 8

tím-suèn-hó? tím? 'how? (in what manner?)', in any way, in some way, do what, what's happened to...?' tím is used here in the sense of 'do what?'; a.f.: tím-yeung\*?; suèn 'to consider, plan, calculate, count'; tím-suèn-hó is same as m-chi-tím-suèn-hó, m-chi-tím-hó, or m-chi-tím-suèn, they all mean 'do not know what to do', 'I am confused'

pai-ai worried, worrisome, to worry, sad, rueful; m-shai  
pai-ai 'no need to worry'; m-hó taam-sam 'do not worry'

k'au-k'eí as long as, if only, provided that

háng willing, to consent to, permit, agree; háng hók 'willing to learn'

yat-tíng certainly, definitely, have to, must; ngóh yat-tíng hui 'I certainly go'; ngóh yat-tíng iú hui 'I must go'

shing-kung succeed, success, successful

tui correct, right, toward, opposite, pair, to face to, to; nei kóng-tak tui lá same as nei kóng-tak ngaam and nei kóng-tak mō-ts'oh, they all mean 'what you said is right'; ngóh tui k'ui kóng 'I talk to him'; yat-tui faai-tsú 'a pair of chopsticks'

kán-iú important, urgent, severe, critical; synonym: chúng-iú 'important'; k'ui pèng-tak hó kán-iú 'he is critically ill'; ni kìn sê hó kán-iú 'this matter is very urgent or important'; Kwóng-Tung wâ\* hó chúng-iú 'Cantonese is very important'

yaü-k'eí-shî especially, particularly

p'ó-p'in common, popular, universal, widespread; Kwóng-Tung wâ\* hó p'ó-p'in 'Cantonese is very common'

chúng-iú important, essential, indispensable

i-ka now, at the present time, at this moment; a.f. ka-hã, ka-chân, in-tsoi

kei-ooi opportunity, chance

nō-lîk to put forth effort, industrious, studious, diligent, working hard; synonym: k'an-lîk

m-hai otherwise, if not, not; a.f. uē-kwóh m-hai

## INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 8

tsau auxiliary for the future tense, then, if then, thereupon, without delay; then, on the other hand; simply, namely, about to; uē-kwóh m-hai tsau... 'otherwise, then...'; ngōh tsau hui 'I'll go right away, I'm about to go'; tsau-hai ni kōh yān 'it's just this person'. A conditional or concessive clause precedes the main clause to which it is subordinated, as Uē-kwóh lôk uē, ngōh tsau m-hui 'If it rains, I (then) won't go.' While 'then' is usually omitted in English, it is the 'if'-word that is usually omitted in Chinese, thus, Lôk uē ngōh tsau m-hui 'It rains I then don't go,--if it rains, I won't go.' A conditional or concessive clause never follows the main clause except as an afterthought after a dash. A premeditated dependent clause placed after the main clause (found in some contemporary writing) is definitely a Europeanism and is appreciated as such.

kwòk-ka country, nation, fatherland; synonym: kwòk

tui...m-chuê unable to reciprocate one's favor, unable to face a person owing to some fault, a form of apology; tui yān m-chuê 'unable to face a person owing to some fault'; tui kwòk-ka m-chuê 'not loyal to one's country'; tsz-kei 'self'; tui tsz-kei m-chuê 'doing injustice to himself' a.f. tui...tui m-chuê, tui m-chuê...

tsz-kei oneself; ngōh tsz-kei 'I myself'; nei tsz-kei 'you yourself'; k'ui tsz-kei 'he himself, she herself'

uē-kwóh if, provided

tó tó 'resultative verb, indicating success in attaining object of the action'; hòk-tó 'have learned, have mastered'

tui...yau kung-hin kung-hin 'contribution, to contribute, dedicate, devote'; tui...yau kung-hin 'a contribution to...'

tui...yau yik yik 'advantage, advantageous, benefit, beneficial, asset'; yau yik 'to have advantage, to have benefit'; yau yung 'useful'; tui...yau yik 'an asset to..., a benefit to..'

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 9

ORAL MATERIAL

Cheung Sheûng-Sz̄: Kóng yaú kóng là. Ts'at-uêt shâp-saam hô hai  
lăi-paai kei à?

Cheung T'aai-T'aai\*: Táng ngõh t'ai-hă. Taaî-ts'in-yât lâi-paai-  
yat, ts'in-yât lâi-paai-i, ts'am-yât lâi-paai-saam, kam-yât  
lâi-paai sei, t'ing-yât lâi-paai-ng, haû-yât lâi-paai-lûk,  
taaî-haû-yât lâi-paai...

Sheûng-Sz̄: K'am-yât lâi-paai saam, shâp-hô, kam-yât lâi-paai  
sei, shâp-yat-hô; t'ing-yât lâi-paai ng, shâp-i-hô; haû-yât  
lâi-paai lûk, shâp-saam-hô. Lăi-paai lûk hai ts'at-uêt shâp-  
saam hô là.

T'aai-T'aai\*: Ngõh i-wai nei tûk shue tûk-tak kòm mông, yat-tîng  
oõi m-kei-tak-chóh kóh yat hai mi-yě yat-tsú là.

Sheûng-Sz̄: Tím oõi m-kei-tak kè ne. Kóh yat hai nei kè shaang-  
yat, yaú hai ngõh-tei kit fan kè kei-nim yat a mã.

T'aai-T'aai\*: M-chi-m-kòk, ngõh-tei i-king kit-chóh-fan shēng  
shâp kei nin, ngõh yik-to shēng kei-shâp sui là.

Sheûng-Sz̄: Ngõh-tei ts'éng kei kòh p'ang-yaú lai shik ts'aan  
faân, yám hă tsaú, ko-hing hă è?

T'aai-T'aai\*: Hó à. Ngõh kík-chi tsaân-shing.



INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 9

M/Sgt Cheung: Come to think of it, what day of the week will July the 13th be?

Mrs. Cheung: Let me see. Two days before yesterday was Monday. The day before yesterday was Tuesday. Yesterday was Wednesday. Today is Thursday. Tomorrow will be Friday. The day after tomorrow will be Saturday. And two days after tomorrow will be Sunday.

M/Sgt: Yesterday was Wednesday the 10th. Today is Thursday the 11th. Tomorrow will be Friday the 12th. The day after tomorrow will be Saturday the 13th. Therefore, July the 13th will be Saturday.

Mrs. Cheung: Since you have been so busy studying, I thought you must have forgotten what day it is.

M/Sgt: How could I forget that day? It is going to be your birthday and our wedding anniversary.

Mrs. Cheung: It is hard to realize that we have been married for a number of years, and we are in our middle-age.

M/Sgt: Let us invite several friends for dinner, have a few drinks, and celebrate, shall we?

Mrs. Cheung: Fine. I agree with you whole-heartedly.

張上士：講又講啦。七月十三號係禮拜幾  
 張太太：講聽！我睇吓。大前日禮拜一，前日  
 等禮拜二，禮拜五，禮拜三，禮拜六，禮拜四，  
 聽日禮拜……  
 上士：禽日禮拜三，十號；今日禮拜四，  
 十後七日禮拜三，聽日禮拜五，十二號；  
 太太：我以為你讀書日讀得咁野，忙，一定會唔  
 上士：點會唔係我記得咁呢。咁野日子，你嘅生日，  
 太太：唔知年地，請慶我幾吓我極之贊成。  
 上士：我地高呀。  
 太太：好呀。

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 9

READING MATERIAL

拜日三  
 禮聽十  
 係日六  
 前一拜  
 號十禮  
 ; 係號  
 八四日四  
 拜後十  
 一禮號  
 拜係號  
 禮拜二  
 係尋十  
 日; 日  
 前號五  
 大九拜  
 ; 禮大  
 二係號

佢睇一係禮。怪  
 佢士日係子唔  
 幾上三日日!  
 拜幾張十三嘅呀!  
 禮拜為月十要日  
 係禮以七月緊念!  
 三係佢, 七好紀念!  
 十日, 話知道個嘅得  
 月啲忙士知一婚記  
 七道咁上會係結咁  
 知道得張點日太子  
 知想讀係士啲太日  
 唔好書但上未張個  
 太都讀; 張原同啲  
 太士知道! 佢於  
 張上上知六呢係對  
 張張唔拜六日佢  
 同倒定禮拜六日得

年友之  
 幾朋極  
 十個太  
 成幾太  
 婚請張  
 吓想吓  
 結佢吓  
 已經! 慶  
 已啦高  
 地歲, 高  
 佢十酒  
 , 幾吓  
 覺成飲  
 唔都,  
 知亦飯  
 唔士餐  
 上食成  
 張黎贊

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 9

QUESTIONS

Taaî-t's'in-yât haî laî-paaî keî, keî hô à?

Ts'in-yât haî laî-paaî keî, keî hó à?

Kam-yât haî laî-paaî keî, keî hó à?

Haû-yât haî laî-paaî keî à?

Ni kòh uêt haî keî uêt à?

Ts'at-uêt shâp-saam hô haî laî-paaî keî à?

Cheung T'aaî-T'aaî\* chi m̄-chi-tò ts'at-uêt shâp-saam haî laî-paaî-lûk à?

K'uî m̄-chi-tò, k'uî seúng m̄-seúng chi-tò à?

Cheung Sheûng-Sz̄ tûk shue tûk-tak tím à?

K'uî tûk shue tûk-tak kòm mōng, k'uî tím ooî keî-tak ts'at-uêt shâp-saam haî laî-paaî-lûk à?

Ts'at-uêt shâp-saam haî yat-kòh mi-yě kè yât-ts̄ à?

K'uî-teî kít fan kít-chóh keî-tóh nín là?

Cheung Sheûng-Sz̄ í-ka keî-toh sui à?

K'uî seúng ts'éng keî kòh p'āng-yaũ tsô mi-yě à?

Cheung Sheûng-Sz̄ seúng ts'éng p'āng-yaũ shik faân, k'uî kè t'aaî-t'aaî\* tsaàn m̄-tsaàn-shing à?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 9

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

kóng yaü kóng là! 'come to think of it', 'since you mention it'

Cardinal	Numbers	Cardinal	Numbers
yat	one	shâp-yat	eleven
î, leüŋ	two	shâp-î	twelve
saam	three		
sei	four	î-shâp	twenty
ng̃	five	î-shâp-yat	twenty-one
lûk	six	î-shâp-î	twenty-two
ts'at	seven	saam-shâp	thirty
paät	eight		
kaú	nine	yat-paäk	one hundred
shâp	ten	î-paäk	two hundred
		yat-ts'in	one thousand
		î-ts'in	two thousand

YEAR

yat-kaú-lîng-lîng-nîn	1900
yat-kaú-lîng-yat-nîn	1901
yat-kaú-lîng-î-nîn	1902
yat-kaú-yat-lîng-nîn	1910
yat-kaú-î-î-nîn	1922
yat-kaú-ng̃-paät-nîn	1958
yat-kaú-ts'at-lîng-nîn	1970

MONTH

yat	- uêt	January
ching	- uêt	January
î	- uêt	February
saam	- uêt	March
sei	- uêt	April
ng̃	- uêt	May
iûk	- uêt	June
ts'at	- uêt	July
paät	- uêt	August
kaú	- uêt	September
shâp	- uêt	October
shâp-yat	- uêt	November
shâp-î	- uêt	December

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 9

yat	- kòh	uêt	one month
leŭng	- kòh	uêt	two months
saam	- kòh	uêt	three months
sei	- kòh	uêt	four months
ng	- kòh	uêt	five months
lùk	- kòh	uêt	six months
ts'at	- kòh	uêt	seven months
paat	- kòh	uêt	eight months
kaú	- kòh	uêt	nine months
shâp	- kòh	uêt	ten months
shâp-yat	- kòh	uêt	eleven months
shâp-î	- kòh	uêt	twelve months

DAY

yat	- hô	1st
î	- hô	2nd
saam	- hô	3rd
sei	- hô	4th
ng	- hô	5th
lùk	- hô	6th
ts'at	- hô	7th
paat	- hô	8th
kaú	- hô	9th
shâp	- hô	10th
shâp-yat	- hô	11th
shâp-î	- hô	12th
î-shâp	- hô	20th
î-shâp-yat	- hô	21st
î-shâp-î	- hô	22nd
saam-shâp	- hô	30th
saam-shâp-yat -hô		31st

a.f. of hò is yât  
a.f. of î-shâp is yâ or yê  
a.f. of saam-shâp is sa or sa-â

WEEK

sheung leung-kòh lai-paai	week before last
tui sheung leung-kòh lai-paai	week before last
tui sheung yat-kòh lai-paai	last week
sheung kòh lai-paai	last week

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 9

ni kòh lai-paai	this week
hâ kòh lai-paai	next week
tui hâ yat-kòh lai-paai	next week
tui hâ leung-kòh lai-paai	week after next

lai-paai-yat	Monday
lai-paai-i	Tuesday
lai-paai-saam	Wednesday
lai-paai-sei	Thursday
lai-paai-ng	Friday
lai-paai-luk	Saturday
lai-paai	Sunday
lai-paai-yat	Sunday

a.f. of lai-paai is shing-k'eí, thus, shing-k'eí-yat, shing-k'eí-yât, or shing-k'eí.

uêt month, moon

hò number, day of the month (a.f. yât)

lai-paai week, Sunday; a.f. shing-k'eí

keí how? (to what extent), to any extent, to some extent, not... very (with negative), a few, several, some, interrogative numerals: 'how many? how much?' Like the numerals, it is normally followed by an AN: in this case, the a.f. of keí is keí-toh

lai-paai keí what day of the week? In this case, since the keí is after the noun, we cannot use the a.f. keí-toh, never say lai-paai keí-toh, but lai-paai keí

taaí-ts'in-yât ts'in-yât 'day before yesterday'; taaí-ts'in-yât 'two days before yesterday'; ts'in-maän 'night before last'; taaí-ts'in-maän 'two nights before last'; ts'in-nin 'year before last'; taaí-ts'in-nin 'two years before last'

yat one, once, as soon as; ngõh yat lai, ngõh tsaü hui kin nei 'as soon as I come, I shall go to see you'; nei yat m-siü-sam, tsaü ooí tsô ts'òh 'once you are careless, you will make mistakes'

taaí-haü-yât haü-yât 'day after tomorrow'; taaí-haü-yât 'two days after tomorrow'; haü-maän 'night after tomorrow night';

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 9

taai-haû-maän 'two nights after tomorrow night'; haû-nîn 'year after next'; taai-haû-nîn 'two years after next'

k'ām-yât yesterday; a.f.: ts'ām-yât, tsōk-yât, tsòk-yât;  
k'ām-maän 'last night'; tsōk-maän 'last night'; tsòk-maän 'last night'

ĩ-wai to presume, take it that..., regard as, think, believe it that..., take for granted (a.f.: tông). In many cases, but not always, the a.f. of ĩ-wai are koó, nám 'to believe, think, figure out'. In the case of a.f. tông, it most likely means 'to take for granted', thus, ngōh tông neĩ m-lai 'I took it for granted that you wouldn't come'

mōng busy, hurried, in haste

kei-tak to remember, recall, recollect; synonym: kei-tak-heĩ

chóh perfective suffix, usually translatable by the perfect or past in English. Here chóh has the force of making the action complete. In cases of VO construction, such as shík faân tük shue, the correct position of chóh is right after the verb, thus, shík-chóh faân, tük-chóh shue, etc. In the case of kei-tak, kei-tak is a bound form which cannot be separated by chóh so the correct position of chóh is after kei-tak, thus kei-tak-chóh

yât-tsú date, day, festival; synonym: yât.

kit fan VO construction; to get married, to marry. Since kit fan is a VO, the verb suffixes (kán, chóh, uēn, etc) should be placed right after the verb kit, thus, kit-kán fan 'being married, marrying', kit-chóh fan 'is married, married'

kei-nim yât kei-nim 'to commemorate, commemoration';  
kei-nim-yât 'anniversary day of commemoration'; yat-chau-nin  
kei-nim-yât '1st anniversary', leung-chau-nin kei-nim-yât '2nd anniversary', etc

m-chi-m-kòk chi-kòk 'to feel, perceive, sensation'; m-chi-m-kòk 'without realizing it, not knowing, not perceiving, unconsciously'; a.f.: pat-chi-pat-kòk

nin year



INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 9

shâp keí ten-odd, more than ten; paák keí 'hundred-odd';  
etc.; keí shâp 'several tens'; keí paák 'several hundreds'

shīng shâp-keí nīn shīng 'whole, to complete, entire';  
a.f. of shīng:shēng; shēng shâp keí nīn 'ten odd years'; shēng  
has the force 'entire, whole, that long, etc'.

shuì year (s) old, year (lit); keí shâp shuì 'several  
tens of years old', a.f. keí â shuì

ts'êng to invite, please, ask, request; a.f.: ts'ing

kòh AN for individual person and certain things; keí kòh  
p'aāng-yaũ 'several friends'

p'aāng-yaũ friend; a.f.: p'āng-yaũ

tsaú wine, liquor, alcoholic drink; yám tsaú 'to drink  
liquor'

ko-hīng happy, glad to, to have fun; ngōh hó ko-hīng kīn-  
tó neí 'I'm very happy that I have seen you'; ko-hīng hā 'to  
have some fun'

kîk-chi extremely; a.f. kîk, fei-sheung-chi

tsaân-shīng to be in favor of, support, agree with, go  
along with (an idea)

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 10

ORAL MATERIAL

Cheung Sheûng-SZ: Kóm, ngõh-teî tsô chué-yān. Ngõh-teî ying-koi ts'éng pin keí kòh yān-haàk ne?

Cheung T'aai-T'aai\*: Ts'ui-pîn\* neí. Neí k'uèt-tíng la. Neí wā la.

Sheûng-SZ: Ngõh tá-suèn ts'éng keí kòh í-ka kè t'ūng-hòk, keí kòh kaû-shí tá cheung kè lǒ yaũ, keí kòh kaaü-koon, keí kòh kaàk-leí lūn-shè\*. Uē-kwóh yaũ t'aai-t'aai\* kè, tsaü ts'éng-maai k'ui-teî kè t'aai-t'aai\*, hó mà?

T'aai-T'aai\*: P'à yān toh mà? P'à yān toh ti mà?

Sheûng-SZ: Hai pòh. Yān t'aai toh pòh. Pat-uē tsíng ts'éng keí kòh lǒ yaũ pā la.

T'aai-T'aai\*: Pin keí wai\* ne?

Sheûng-SZ: Leí Sheûng-Kaaü, Leí T'aai-T'aai\*, Ko Chung-Kaaü, Ko T'aai-T'aai\*, K'eí Shiù-Kaaü, K'eí T'aai-T'aai\*, Lōh Sheûng-Wai, Lōh T'aai-T'aai\*, Paák Sheûng-Wai, Nǎ Chung-Wai, Hōh Shiù-Wai, Leí Chún-Wai, Ch'ān Kaaü-Koon, t'ūng-maai neí kè nüí p'aāng-yaũ Wōng Á-Lín Siú-Tsé, hó mà?

T'aai-T'aai\*: Táng ngõh shó hǎ...yat-kòh, leüng-kòh, saam-kòh..., yat, í, saam, sei, nǎ, lúk, ts'at, paát, kaú, shâp, shâp-yat, shâp-í, shâp-saam, shâp-sei...shâp-sei-kòh yān. Hó là. Kàü là. Tsaü kóm là.

Sheûng SZ: T'ing-yât tsoi kóng. Ngõh-teî í-ka hui fàn kaaü, hó mà?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 10

M/Sgt Cheung: Well, we are going to be the host and hostess.

Whom should we invite?

Mrs. Cheung: It's up to you. You decide.

M/Sgt: I plan to invite several classmates, old buddies during the war, instructors and neighbors. For those who have wives, the wives will be invited too. What do you think?

Mrs. Cheung: Don't you think it is a little too many?

M/Sgt: May be. We might as well just invite several old friends.

Mrs. Cheung: Who?

M/Sgt: Colonel and Mrs. Leī, Lt. Colonel and Mrs. Ko, Major and Mrs. K'eī, Captain and Mrs. Lōh, Captain White, 1st Lt. Ng, 2nd Lt. Hōh, W.O. Leī, Instructor Ch'ān, and your lady friend Miss Arlene Wōng? What do you think?

Mrs. Cheung: Let me see...one, two, three...one, two, three, four, five, six, seven, eight, nine, ten, eleven, twelve, thirteen, fourteen...fourteen persons. I think that's enough.

M/Sgt: We'll talk about it again tomorrow. Let's go to bed. Shall we?

張上士：敢，我地做主人。我地應該請邊  
幾個人客呢？

張太太：隨便你。你決定啦，你話啦。  
上士：我打算請幾個而家嘅同學，幾個舊時  
打仗嘅老友，幾個教官，幾個隔埋  
離鄰舍。如果有太太嘅，就請埋  
佢地嘅太太，好嗎？

太太：怕人多嗎？怕人多啲嗎？

上士：係播，人太多播。不如淨請幾個老  
友罷啦。

太太：邊幾位呢？

上士：李上校，李太太，高中校，高太太，  
祁少校，祁太太，羅上尉，羅太太，  
白上尉，伍中尉，何少尉，  
李准尉，陳教官，同埋你嘅女朋  
友黃亞蓮小姐好嗎？

太太：等我數吓……一個，兩個，三個……，  
一，二，三，四，五，六，七，八，九，十，十一，十  
二，十三，十四……十四個人。  
好啦。够啦，就敢啦。

上士：聽日再講。我地而家去馴覺，好嗎？



INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 10

QUESTIONS

Pin-kòh seúng ts'éng p'aāng-yaũ shik faân à?

K'ui seúng ts'éng kei toh yān, seúng ts'éng pin kei kòh yān à?

K'ui m-k'uet-ting-tak, Cheung T'aai-T'aai\* ne?

Cheung T'aai-T'aai\* m-k'uet-ting-tak, k'ui tim wa à?

Cheung Sheung-Sz tá-suèn ts'éng pin ti yān à?

Kòh ti t'ung-hòk hai i-ka kè, yik-waak hai kau-shi kè à?

Kòh ti ló yaũ hai tim kà?

Kòh ti kaaü-koon hai pin shuè kè à?

Uë-kwòh kòh ti yān-haak yaũ t'aai-t'aai\*, ts'éng m-ts'éng-maai k'ui-tei à?

Cheung Sheung-Sz seúng ts'éng kòm toh yān, Cheung T'aai-T'aai\* tim à?

Cheung T'aai-T'aai\* p'à yān toh, Cheung Sheung-Sz ne?

K'ui-tei leung kòh to p'à yān toh, k'ui-tei tsaü tim à?

K'ui-tei k'uet-ting ts'éng pin kei kòh ló yaũ t'ung k'ui-tei kè t'aai-t'aai\* à?

Cheung T'aai-T'aai\* shó-hă yān-shò, yaũ kei toh yān à?

K'ui-tei kóng-uën ts'éng shik faân kè yě, tsaü tsô mi-yě à?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 10

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

chué-yān host, hostess, master

yān-haāk guest; synonym: haāk-yān, haāk (lit)

ts'ui-pîn\* at one's convenience, any way, in any manner,  
no matter (what)

tâ-suén to plan to, schedule to, intends to

t'üng-hôk school-mate, class-mate

kaû-shī kaû 'old, not new'; shī 'days, time'; kaû-shī 'the  
old days, formerly'

tá cheùng to fight a battle or war

lõ yaũ lõ 'old (in age), aged', term of honor and respect;  
lõ yaũ 'old friend, long time friend, buddy'

kaäk-lei neighboring, adjoining; kaäk-lei uk 'neighboring  
house'; kaäk-lei kaai 'neighboring street, next street, street  
within walking distance'

lün-shê lün 'neighboring, near to' (lit); shê 'humble  
house' (lit); lün-shê 'neighbor' (lit)

kaäk-lei lün-shê neighbor, neighboring house

maai together, close together, to move close together,  
to embed; ts'éng-maai k'ui-tei 'to invite them also'; haäng-maai  
lai 'to walk over here'; haäng-maai ti 'to walk closer'

p'á to fear, be afraid of, think that..., lest, dread,  
perhaps; k'ui p'á tá cheùng 'he is afraid of war'; ngõh p'á yān  
toh 'I'm afraid that there are so many people'; ngõh p'á laäng  
'I can't stand cold, I'm susceptible to cold'

t'aaì too, excessively; t'aaì toh yān 'too many people'

pat-uē had better, why not..., better let (me), might as  
well, not as (good as)(lit)

tsing only, merely; a.f. tsing-hai; ngõh tsing hai hôk  
Kwóng-Tung wâ\* 'I only learn Cantonese'; tsing 'clean, neat and  
tidy'

pâ\* la! particle having the force of advising and suggest-  
ing

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 10

Leī common surname 'Lee'

Ko surname, tall, high, superior

K'eī surname

Lōh surname

Nǝ surname, five, companion (lit)

Hōh common surname 'Ho', how? (lit), what? (lit), why? (lit)

t'ūng-maaī together with, and, as well as

À-Līn līn 'lotus'; À-Līn phonetic transcription of 'Arlene'

shó to count, calculate; shò ts'in\* to count money'; shò 'amount, account, number'; yat 'one'; ī 'two', ī is used in simple counting, in compound numbers, and in other idiomatic compounds; leūng 'two', leūng is used before an AN, thus, leūng-kòh yān 'two persons'; saam 'three'; sei 'four'; nǝ 'five'; lūk 'six'; ts'at 'seven'; paat 'eight'; kau 'nine'; shâp 'ten'; shâp keī 'ten-several, --ten odd, --between ten and twenty'; while numbers between 11 and 19 are called 'shâp-yat, shâp-ī, shâp-saam, shâp-sei, etc', an optional 'yat' may be prefixed to 'shâp-yat, etc' in numbers involving hundreds, thousands etc. Thousands are never spoken of as 'many hundreds', thus leūng-ts'in 'two thousands', never ī-shâp-paak 'twenty hundreds'. Numbers between 20 and 90 are called 'ī-shâp, saam-shâp, sei-shâp' etc.

kaù là! kaù 'enough, sufficient'; kaù là! 'that's enough, that's all!'

tσαû-kóm la! that's all! ; synonym: haī-kòm-toh!

k'uet-tīng to decide, to determine, to resolve, decision, resolution



INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 11

ORAL MATERIAL

Cheung T'aaì-T'aaì\*: À-Chim, À-Chim! Faaì ti heí shan là! Naaû-chung heúng-chóh hó noí là! Tím-kaaí neí chûng m̄-háng heí shan à?

Cheung Sheûng-Sz̄: Ngõh fàn noí ti to m̄-tak. Ī-ka kau-kíng keí tím-chung à?

T'aaì-T'aaì\*: Lûk-tím taáp saam là. M̄-haî, m̄-haî. Ni kòh chung maân-chóh leũng-kòh tsz̄. Kóh kòh piu chì ngaam. Ī-ka ĩ-king lûk-tím yâ-nǎ fan là. Neí tò-taí heí m̄-heí shan kà?

Sheûng-Sz̄: Wā haaí! Kòm aàn lā! Ts'ām-maän fàn-tak yê. Ngõh ĩ-ka tsik-hak heí shan là.

T'aaì-T'aaì\*: Faaì-ts'ui ti là! Maí neí ooí ch'í kà là.

Sheûng-Sz̄: Neí maí ts'ui nõh tak kà. Ngõh iù t'ai so, saí mîn, ts'aat ngā, shoh t'aū, oôn chai-fûk sin chì tak kà.

T'aaì-T'aaì\*: Kam-yât laí-paaì-nǎ pòh. Yaũ kím-uêt mà?

Sheûng-Sz̄: Yaũ tîng\*-là! Neí t'ũng nõh ning tîng ti sut-shaam, t'aaì, haaí, mât, chai-fûk, t'ũng mô\*. Chíng-hó ti fai-cheung, hó mà?

T'aaì-T'aaì\*: Hó à! Chûng yaũ mi-yě t'im à? Táng nõh t'ũng neí ning tîng ch'ut lai la!

Sheûng-Sz̄: Mõ là. Haî-kòm-toh là, Mã-Leí.

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 11

Mrs. Cheung: Jim! Get up! The alarm clock has been ringing for sometime now. Why do you refuse to get up?

M/Sgt Cheung: Can't I sleep just for a little while longer? After all, what time is it?

Mrs: It's 6:15. Oh, no! The clock is ten minutes slow. The watch is right. It's 6:25 already. Are you getting up or not?

M/Sgt: Is it that late? We went to sleep late last night. I'm getting up right now.

Mrs: Hurry up! Otherwise, you will be late.

M/Sgt: Don't rush me. I have to shave, wash my face, brush my teeth, comb my hair and change into my uniform.

Mrs: Today is Friday. Are you going to have an inspection?

M/Sgt: Of course we are! Will you get ready the shirt, the tie, shoes, socks, uniform and cap, and fix up the insignia for me?

Mrs: All right. What else? I'll get them ready for you.

M/Sgt: That will be all, Mary.

張太太\*：亞占，亞占！快啲起身啦！鬧鐘響咗好耐啦！點解你重唔肯起身呀？

張上士：我耐啲都唔得，而家究竟幾點鐘呀？

太太\*：六點踏三啦，唔係唔係，呢個鐘慢咗兩個字，嗰個鏢至啱，而家已經六點廿五分啦，你到底起唔起身㗎？

上士：嘩吟！咁晏啦！尋晚耐得夜，我而家即刻起身啦。

太太\*：快趣啲啦！噠你會遲㗎。

上士：你咪催我得㗎，我要剃鬚，洗面，擦牙，梳頭，換制服先至得㗎。

太太\*：今日禮拜五，有檢閱嗎？

上士：有定啦！你同我掙定啲恤衫，咗，鞋，襪，制服同帽，整好啲徽章，好嗎？

太太\*：好呀！重有乜野添呀？等我同你掙定出黎啦。

上士：冇啦，係咁多啦，瑪利。

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 11

READING MATERIAL

經起晚而三；已經好  
 已肯尋道踏已家  
 鐘唔佢知點家而  
 鬧重，想六而知道  
 嘅佢話，佢家以知  
 士，佢，而所佢  
 上覺，的，而所佢  
 張緊身耐話，字倒  
 三· 訓起訓太個聽  
 三重响想太兩士  
 踏佢快佢張上  
 點係佢家· 慢張  
 六但叫而鐘鐘· 起  
 係· 太，點開分刻  
 家耐太夜幾個五即  
 而好張好底嗰廿五  
 咗· 得到係點，佢  
 響身· 馴家但六晏

遲，上，  
 太張，  
 佢張！洗面，  
 怕啦！可以  
 太遲，可以  
 大會剃至  
 張就要後  
 係重然後  
 身唔佢，然  
 咗，佢制服，  
 起校，佢制  
 已經學催換  
 已去味，  
 士的太頭，  
 上趣太梳  
 張快張，  
 叫佢叫張  
 擦牙，

張制服衫，  
 佢叫制完衫，  
 閩，襪，換  
 檢鞋，張上  
 學校，徽章·  
 學校有，張  
 學校，徽章·  
 五恤衫，  
 禮拜的整去  
 禮定的又就  
 係擰，就  
 今日佢黎餐  
 同出早  
 太帽  
 太同食

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 11

QUESTIONS

I-ka keí tím-chung à?

Ī-ka lûk-tím taâp saam, Cheung Sheûng-Szê kè naaû-chung heúng-chóh meí à?

Kòh naaû-chung ĩ-king heúng-chóh hó noi, k'uĩ heí-chóh shan meí à?

K'uĩ m-háng heí shan, tím-kaaí k'uĩ seúng fàn noi ti à?

K'uĩ kè naaû-chung ngaam m-ngaam à?

Kaù-kîng ĩ-ka keí tím-chung à?

Cheung Sheûng-Szê t'eng-tó, k'uĩ tsaû tím-yeûng\* à?

Tím-kaaí Cheung T'aaí-T'aaí\* ts'ui k'uĩ faai-ts'ui ti hui hôk-haaû à?

Cheung Sheûng-Szê chûng meí hui-tak, k'uĩ chûng-iù tsô-uên mi-yě chí hui-tak à?

Kam-yât hai laĩ-paaí keí à?

Hôk-haaû kam-yât yaũ mǎ kím-uêt à?

Cheung Sheûng-Szê kiù k'uĩ kè t'aaí-t'aaí\* t'ûng k'uĩ tsô ti mi-yě à?

Cheung Sheûng-Szê oôn-uên sut-shaam..., shík-chóh tsó-ts'aan, tsaû tím à?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 11

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

naaû-chung naaû 'noisy, crowded, to make noise, to scold';  
chung 'clock, bell'; naaû-chung 'alarm clock'

heúng to ring, sound, echo, make noise

noî long (in time), a period of time, to endure

tím-kaaí why? how is it that...?

kaù-kíng after all, actually, really, in the last analysis;  
a.f.: tò-tai

tím-chung o'clock, hour; a.f.: tím; lûk-tím (lûk tím-chung  
'six hours'. The syntax will clarify the difference

lûk-tím taâp ts'at taâp 'to tread on, point to, fall';  
lûk-tím taâp yat (lûk-tím yat-kòh tsẑ) '6:05'; lûk-tím taâp í  
(lûk-tím leung-kòh tsẑ) '6:10'; lûk-tím taâp saam '6:15'; lûk-  
tím taâp ts'at '6:35'

maân slow, sluggish

tsẑ five-minute multiples marked on face of clock or watch,  
Chinese character; lûk-tím yat-kòh tsẑ (lûk-tím taâp yat) '6:05';  
lûk-tím leung-kòh tsẑ (lûk-tím taâp í) '6:10'; lûk-tím saam-kòh  
tsẑ (lûk-tím taâp saam) '6:15';

piu watch, meter; shaú-piu 'wrist watch'

fan to divide, to split, share, lessen, grade, minute;  
nǎ fan (a.f.: nǎ fan-chung) 'five minutes'; shâp fan (shâp fan-  
chung) 'ten minutes'; lûk-tím nǎ fan (lûk-tím taâp yat, lûk-tím  
yat-kòh tsẑ) '6:05'; lûk-tím shâp-fan (lûk-tím taâp í, lûk-tím  
leung-kòh tsẑ) '6:10'

tò-tai after all, anyway, really, actually; a.f.: kaù-  
kíng; tò tai 'down to the bottom'

wā haai! 'gee! wow!'

aân late (in day time), noon, lunch; synonym: yê (late  
in night time), ch'í (late in time)

yê late (in night time), length of the night; yât yê  
'day and night'; yât yê 'a night'

tsik-hak immediately, at once, right away, instantly;  
a.f.: lâp-hak, lâp-tsik, tsik (lit.)

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 11

faai-ts'ui fast, quick, speedy, rapid, swift; a.f.: faai;  
faai-ts'ui ti la! 'hurry up!'

maí fusion form of m-haí, otherwise, if not; a.f.: uē-  
kwóh m-haí

maí don't! a.f.: m-hó!

ts'ui to urge, hasten, rush, press upon; maí ts'ui ngōh  
tak kâ\*! 'don't rush me!'

t'ai so so 'beard, mustache, whisker'; t'ai 'to shave,  
to shave with razor'; t'ai so 'to shave', VO construction

sai mîn sai 'to wash, cleanse'; mîn 'face, surface, side';  
sai mîn 'to wash face', VO construction

ts'aat ngā ts'aat 'to brush, rub, polish, a brush'; ngā  
'tooth'; ts'aat ngā 'to brush teeth', VO construction; ngā-  
ts'aat\* 'tooth brush'; ts'aat haaí 'to polish shoes, shine  
shoes'; haaí-ts'aat 'shoe brush'; ts'aat shaam 'to brush clothes;  
shaam-ts'aat 'clothes brush'

shoh t'aū shoh 'to comb, dress hair, a comb (AN: chèk)';  
t'aū 'head, the chief, the first one'; shoh t'aū 'to comb, to  
comb hair', VO construction

oôn to change, exchange, replace; oôn shaam 'to change  
clothes'; oôn haaí 'to change shoes'; oôn ts'in\* 'to exchange  
money'; oôn yān 'to replace personnel, to shift personnel assign-  
ment'

chai-fúk a uniform, to overcome; synonym: kwan-fúk  
(military); oôn chai-fúk 'to change uniform'

kim-uêt to review troops, inspection

yaū-tîng\*la! tîng\* 'for sure, of course, definitely';  
yaū-tîng\*-la! 'of course, there is'; hui-tîng\*-la! 'of course  
(I) go'; shik-tîng\*-la! 'of course (I) eat'

tîng ready, to fix, fixed, decided, to decide, either...  
or...? ning-tîng... 'to have...ready'; ning-tîng ti sut-shaam  
'to have the shirts ready'; taai-tîng ti ts'in\* 'to bring some  
money along ready...'

sut-shaam shirt; AN: kîn

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 11

t'aaí necktie, car tire; AN: t'iū  
haaí shoes; AN: tui 'pair', chèk 'one'  
mât socks, stockings; AN: tui 'pair', chèk 'one'  
mô\* hat, cap; AN: kîn, téng; kwan-mô\* 'military cap'  
fai-cheung cheung 'batch, emblem'; fai-cheung 'insignia'  
haî-kòm-toh that is all



INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 12

ORAL MATERIAL

Cheung T'aaí-T'aaí\*: Á-Chim, neí kam-yât iú kà ch'e mà?

Cheung Sheûng-Sz̄: Neí yaú iú kà ch'e ā? Iú lai tsô mi-yě à?

T'aaí-T'aaí\*: Ngõh sheûng-chaú iú hui p'ò-t'au\* maaí yě, hui tsaâp-fòh p'ò\* maaí sùng. Hâ-chaú yaú iú hui kaau shuí fai, tân fai, mooí-heí fai, tân-wâ\* fai.

Sheûng-Sz̄: Kà ch'e kei-heí haāng-tak m̄-hai keí hó. Kân-loí yûng tân-yaú, yûng yaú\* yaú toh. Ch'oh-shí ngõh tá-sùen seúng ning kà ch'e hui ching. Kei-in neí iú hui kòm toh shuè, pat-uē ngõh lau faan kà ch'e peí neí yûng pâ\* la.

T'aaí-T'aaí\*: Neí chan-hai liú-kaaí ngõh, t'ûng-ts'ing ngõh. Neí chan-hai yat-kòh hó cheûng-foo là.

Sheûng-Sz̄: Uē-kwóh ngõh-teí ch'ò-tó ti ts'in\*, ngõh-teí ying-koi maaí toh kà ch'e. Yat-kà ngõh yûng. Yat-kà neí yûng.

T'aaí-T'aaí\*: Kóm tsaú chan hó là. Chan fong-pîn là. Neí í-ka tím faan hôk à? Hâ-chaú tím faan lai à?

Sheûng-Sz̄: Wai yaú taâp pa-sz̄\*, tân-ch'e loh. Ngõh iú faan-hôk là. Ā, ngõh kei-foo m̄-kei-tak t'ûng neí tsip mǎn t'im.

T'aaí-T'aaí\*: Tsoi-kín là! Siú-sam à!

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 12

Mrs. Cheung: Jim, do you need the car today?

M/Sgt Cheung: You need the car again? Why do you need the car?

Mrs: I'll have to do some shopping and buy some groceries this morning. I'll have to pay water, electricity, gas, and telephone bills this afternoon.

M/Sgt: The car doesn't run too well. It has been using quite a bit of gas and oil lately. At first I planned to take the car for repair. Now that you have to go to so many places, I'd better leave the car with you for your use.

Mrs: You are most understanding and sympathetic. You are a wonderful husband.

M/Sgt: If we ever save up some money, we should buy a second car. One for my use, and one for you.

Mrs: That would be wonderful. What a convenience! How will you get to school now? How will you come back this afternoon?

M/Sgt: The only thing for me to do is to take the bus or street-car. I've got to go now. Gosh! I almost forgot to kiss you. Good-bye.

Mrs: Bye, dear! Be careful!

張太太：亞占，你要去畫架，今日車舖又電得又翻我啦，的錢，我一架黎，水好時要用我，嗎？也雜費，近打咁罷你，真係多一點，呀？鋪費，用想處，係一，野貨電，未算多啦，真係多，？

張太太：我架車油架不真個好車真學搭，啦！

太太：你個好車真學搭，啦！

太太：敢惟再

太太：再

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 12

READING MATERIAL

上唔，下費。張士話；電話同上太餸電。佢張太買，做用張鋪費。要黎野雜煤，野車也去，好多架做，費，好要黎野電，有想車買，今日佢架頭費，太太話，要鋪水，太太要去交，張士張畫要去。

幾算要用。係打，用唔佢處太。得時多太。行初咁張。器多去俾。機又太架。嘅車油翻。架用張留。個油，既然佢，話電，所以，士用整，野，上未去野，張近車多。

了解打，佢。了又車，佢。祇佢架敢。唔，一。佢添多用。夫太太買太。丈嘅可以張。好佢地俾。一個情佢架。係且敢，一。真而錢；用多。士，錢已好。上太，咁自便。張太多佢方便。

車如果。家有車。而家！如。佢士啦！。太太搭巴士，佢惟有搭巴士。張太搭電車。架呢？就搭電車。俾好，就搭。

佢幾乎唔記得同佢。學翻學。家翻學。而家翻學。士而家翻學。上接。張太太接。既太。

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 12

QUESTIONS

Cheung T'aaì-T'aaì\* kam-yât mōng m̄-mōng à?

K'uĩ tím mōng à? Sheûng-chau iù tsô ti mi-yě à?

K'uĩ hã-chau yaû iù tsô pin ti yě à?

K'uĩ kòm mōng, iù tsô kòm toh yě; k'uĩ t'ûng Cheung Sheûng-Sz kóng, seúng iù ti mi-yě à?

Cheung Sheûng-Sz kà ch'e kè kei-hei hó m̄-hó à?

Kân-loi kóh kà ch'e yûng tân-yaû, yûng yaû\* toh m̄-toh à?

Kóh kà ch'e kân-loi m̄-hai kei hó, ch'oh-shí k'uĩ tá-suèn tím à?

Kei-in k'uĩ seúng ning kà ch'e huì ching, tím-kaaí k'uĩ yaû m̄-ning huì ching à?

Cheung Sheûng-Sz tui k'uĩ kè t'aaì-t'aaì\* hó m̄-hó à?

Cheung Sheûng-Sz tui Cheung T'aaì-T'aaì\* tím hó à?

K'uĩ tá-suèn ch'õ toh ti ts'in\* tsô mi-yě à?

K'uĩ maaí toh yat-kà ch'e, yaû mi-yě yûng à?

K'uĩ pei-chóh kà ch'e Cheung T'aaì-T'aaì\* yûng, k'uĩ tsz-kei ts'õh mi-yě ch'e faan-hôk à?

Cheung Sheûng-Sz i-ka faan-hôk, k'uĩ kei m̄-kei-tak t'ûng Cheung T'aaì-T'aaì\* tsíp mǎn à?

K'uĩ-tei tsíp-chóh mǎn, Cheung Sheûng-Sz tsaû tím à?

## INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 12

## VOCABULARY AND NOTES

kà AN for vehicle, airplane, machine, etc; kà fusion of kè + à

ch'e vehicle; hei ch'e 'automobile, motor car' often abbreviated as ch'e; AN: kà, pō (lit)

sheûng-chau forenoon; a.f.: sheûng-nǎ (more formal)

p'ò-t'au\* store, firm, shop; synonym: p'ò\*

maaĩ yě to shop, shopping

tσα̂p-fòh p'ò\* tσα̂p-fòh 'miscellaneous goods'; p'ò\* 'store, firm, shop; tσα̂p-fòh p'ò\* 'grocery store'

hâ-chau afternoon; a.f.: hâ-nǎ (more formal)

kaau to hand to, to deliver to, to pay, to commit to, to communicate, friendship

shuí fai shuí 'water'; fai 'fee, due, expense, waste, lavish'; shuí fai 'water bill'; kaau shuí fai 'to pay water bill'

tîn fai tîn 'electricity, power'; tîn fai 'electricity bill'

mooĩ-heĩ fai mooĩ-heĩ 'gas'; mooĩ-heĩ fai 'gas bill'

tîn-wâ\*fai tîn-wâ\* 'telephone'; tîn-wâ\* fai 'telephone bill'

kei-heĩ machine, motor, engine

haāng to walk, to go, to travel, to move; the same character can be pronounced as hōng 'a row, a column'; hōng\* 'company, firm, store'; hāng 'conduct, behavior'

kân-loĩ recently, lately

tîn-yaū\* gasoline

yaū lubricant, oil, grease; a.f. yaū\*

ch'oh-shī ch'oh 'prefix for the first to the tenth day of the month in lunar calendar'; shī 'time, date'; ch'oh-shī 'at first, in the beginning'; a.f. ch'oh-ch'oh

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 12

kei-in inasmuch as, if, since

laū-faan laū 'to remain, to keep, to put by, to bequeath, to detain'; faan 'back, re-, return'; laū-faan 'to reserve for, to keep, to save, to salvage'

pei to give, to let, to allow, direct and indirect object agent; when the direct object is placed in a tseung construction, pei 'to' is not omitted before the indirect object; although Chinese verbs have no formal passive voice, the agent of a received action can be specified by pei 'by'

liū-kaaí to understand, to comprehend, to assimilate

t'üng-ts'ing to sympathize, sympathy

cheüng-foo husband (formal); a.f.: sin-shaang (polite), lō-kung (colloquial), lō-p'ōh 'wife' (colloquial)

ts'ō to save (money, articles); synonym: haan, tsing

ts'in\* money, cash

fong-pîn convenient, to facilitate; a.f.: pîn-lei, lei-pîn

faan hōk to go to school (for schooling, daily routine)

wai-yaū wai (lit) 'only, and, but, with, is, an initial particle'; usually, it is untranslatable, used to connect subject and predicate; wai-yaū '...but to...', 'no choice', 'the only way'

taap pa-sz\* taap 'to board, embark' (train, bus, airplane, boat, etc), 'to share' (as a rider in someone's car, table in a restaurant); kung-kung hei-ch'e 'bus'; taap pa-sz\* 'to take a bus'

tin-ch'e streetcar

kei-foō almost, nearly, narrowly, at the point of

tsip mǎn tsip 'to receive, to connect, successive'; mǎn 'to kiss, kiss mouth'; tsip mǎn 'to kiss', VO construction

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 13

ORAL MATERIAL

Cheung Sheûng-Szê: Paâk Sheûng-Wai, nei mông mà? Tui-m-chuê,  
tui-m-chuê. Ngõh kaaú-iũ nei.

Paâk Sheûng-Wai: M-kán-iù, m-kán-iù.

C: Ngõh seúng t'ũng nei kóng keí kui shuêt-wâ, tak mà?

P: Tak, yaũ mat kwai-kòn à?

C: Mõ-mat-tâk-pât-szê. Ni kòh lai-paaí-lûk hai nõh kè t'aaí-  
t'aaí\* kè shaang-yât. Yaũ hai nõh-teí kè kít-fan keí-nîm  
yât. Ngõh-teí seúng ts'éng nei tò nõh-teí kè uk-k'eí shík  
ts'aan pîn-faân che.

P: Õh. Mat kóm haák-heí à. Toh-tsê sin là pòh.

C: M-shai toh-tsê. Ni ts'z ch'ui-chóh nei t'ũng Ch'ân Kaaú-Koon  
chi-ngoí, pat-kwòh chûng yaũ keí wai\* p'aang-yaũ. K'ui-teí  
toh-shò hai í-ts'in tá-cheùng kè lõ yaũ.

P: Hó à. Nei seúng nõh lai-paaí-lûk keí tím-chung tò nei shuè  
ne?

C: Taaí-yeúk\* hâ-nǎ lûk tím-chung tsóh yaũ\*, hó mà? Ngõh-teí  
sin yám keí pooi kai-meí tsaú, in-haũ nõh-teí shík maân-  
ts'aan.



INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 13

M/Sgt Cheung: Capt. White. Are you busy? Sorry to disturb you.

Capt White: Not at all.

C: I would like to talk to you. May I?

W: Certainly. What can I do for you?

C: Nothing in particular. This coming Saturday is my wife's birthday. It is also our wedding anniversary. We would like to ask you to have dinner with us at our home.

W: It is very thoughtful of you. Thank you.

C: You are welcome. This party would include you and Instructor Ch'ān, and a few friends of ours. Most of them were my friends during the war.

W: Wonderful. When should I come on Saturday?

C: Around 6 p.m. Is that all right with you? We will have a couple of cocktails before we have supper.

張上士：白上尉，你忙嗎？對唔住，對唔  
 住。攪擾你。  
 白上尉：唔緊要。  
 張：我想同你講幾句話，得嗎？  
 白：我得也。  
 張：有也特別事。呢個禮拜六係我嘅太太<sup>\*</sup>  
 嘅生日。又係我地嘅結婚紀念餐便  
 我地想請你到  
 飯啫。  
 白：啊。客氣呀。多謝先啦。  
 張：唔使多謝。呢次除咗你同陳教官之外，  
 不過重有幾位朋友。佢地多數係  
 以前打仗嘅老友。  
 白：好呀。你想我禮拜六幾點鐘到你處呢？  
 張：大約下午六點鐘左右，好嗎？我地先  
 飲幾杯鷄尾酒，然後我地食晚餐。

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 13

READING MATERIAL

今日係禮拜五，呢個禮拜六係張太太\*  
 嘅生日，又係佢老朋友張上士嘅結婚屋  
 佢地打算請啲老朋去佢地嘅屋踎食飯。

而家張上士喺學校處睇倒白上尉。張  
 上士話，佢想上士又佢嘅，陳以前  
 分個禮拜六係張太太便尉都係  
 呢而且踎食白佢地  
 屋除友；佢地  
 上士話，張太太係張太太便尉都係  
 而家張上士喺學校處睇倒白上尉。張  
 上士話，佢想上士又佢嘅，陳以前  
 分個禮拜六係張太太便尉都係  
 呢而且踎食白佢地  
 屋除友；佢地

白上尉想知道禮拜六幾點鐘食飯。張  
 上士叫白上尉幾杯大雞尾酒，然  
 踎，先飲幾杯大雞尾酒，然  
 白上尉想知道禮拜六幾點鐘食飯。張  
 上士叫白上尉幾杯大雞尾酒，然

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 13

QUESTIONS

Kam-yât hai lai-paaì keí à?

Ni kòh lai-paaì lûk hai Cheung Sheûng-Sz yik-waâk hai Cheung T'aai-T'aai\* kè shaang-yât à?

Ni kòh lai-paaì lûk ch'ui-chòh hai Cheung T'aai-T'aai\* kè shaang-yât chi-ngoî, yâu hai mi-yě yât-tsú à?

K'ui-teî tá-suèn hai kòh yât tím-yeûng\* ko-hing-hă à?

I-ka Cheung Sheûng-Sz hai pin shuè à?

Cheung Sheûng-Sz hai hôk-haaû shuè t'ai-tó pin-kòh à?

Cheung Sheûng-Sz t'ai-tó Paâk Sheûng-Wai. K'ui t'ung k'ui kóng ti mi-yě à?

Cheung Sheûng-Sz tím-kaaí ts'éng Paâk Sheûng-Sz shik faân à?

Ni ts'è ch'ui-chòh ts'éng Paâk Sheûng-Wai t'ung Ch'an Kaaù-Koon chi-ngoî, chûng ts'éng pin-kòh t'im à?

Ni ti p'aang-yaü hai i-ka kè p'aang-yaü, yik-waâk hai i-ts'in tá-cheung kè lô-yaü à?

Cheung Sheûng-Sz kiù Paâk Sheûng-Wai lai-paaì lûk keí tím-chung tò k'ui kè uk-k'eí à?

K'ui-teî sin yám kai-meí tsaú, in-hâu shik faân, hai m-hai à?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 13

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

kaaú-iũ to disturb, to bother; kaaú-iũ neĩ! 'sorry to disturb you', idiomatic expression (IE)

kuì AN for shuèt-wâ 'words, sentence'

shuèt-wâ words, speech; kóng keí kuì shuèt-wâ 'to say a few words'

kwai-kòn kwai 'noble, expensive, your (honorific form)'; kòn 'business, to work, to do, tree trunk'; kwai-kòn 'your honorable business'

yaũ-mat-kwai-kòn à? IE, what is your honorable business? what can I do for you?

tâk-pît special, peculiar, particular

sê is the most general word for affair, event, business, thing, work; AN: kîn; a.f.: sê-kòn

mõ-mat-tâk-pît-sê IE, nothing particular

tò to come, arrive, reach, to; tò ngõh shuè 'come to my place', 'to my place'; tò-chòh Meĩ-Kwòk 'arrived in America'

uk-k'eí home, quarters

pîn-faân ordinary meal, plain meal (humble form)

haák-hei to stand on ceremony, humble, modest, be nice, formal, polite, courteous

mat-kòm-haák-hei-à! IE, why stand on ceremony, it is very nice of you

toh-tsê thank you, many thanks; toh-tsê is different from m-koi in the manner that toh-tsê is for thanking someone who gives you something materially including treating you to a dinner, whereas m-koi is for thanking someone who does you a favor

toh-tsê-sin-là-pòh! IE, thank you in advance

m-shai-toh-tsê! IE, you are welcome, not at all

ts'z̄ ts'z̄ 'a time, a series, an interval, next in order, secondary, inferior, lower'; ni ts'z̄ 'this time'

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 13

ch'uī-chóh (or ch'uī-hoi)...chi ngoi(or ĩ-ngoî) except, except for, besides...outside of, in addition to; ch'uī-chóh... chi ngoi is a tautological expression like meî...ĭ-ts'in 'before...have not yet'

pat-kwòh 'not surpass,...only, but'

toh-shò the majority, most of the time, often, mostly

ĭ-ts'in ago, previously, formerly, before; ĭ-ts'in, hai... ĭ-ts'in or tsoi...ĭ-ts'in 'before...'; as hai shâp-tim ĭ-ts'in 'before ten o'clock'; lòk uē ĭ-ts'in 'before it rains'; tsoi is a more literary form for hai. Note the use of both meî and ĭ-ts'in in such a construction, 'before we have not talked about today's lesson.' Similarly, tsoi ĭ-king kóng-kwòh kam-yât kè kung fòh ĭ-hâu 'after we have already talked about today's lesson.' The redundant use of meî and ĭ-king in such sentences is the usual idiom.

taaî-yeùk approximately, about, probably, generally speaking; synonym: yeùk (lit)

tsòh yaû\* near to..., about..., this and that, left and right, in the presence of

taaî-yeùk\*..chóh-yaû\* about..., approximately...

yám keí pooi to have a few drinks, or yám-pooi 'to have a drink'

kai-meĩ tsaú meĩ 'tail'; kai-meĩ tsaú 'cocktail', a translation-loan from the English

mañ-ts'aan supper; a.f. mañ-faân

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 14

ORAL MATERIAL

Paâk Sheûng-Wai: Neĩ haĩ pin shuè chuê à? Neĩ wâ neĩ kè teĩ-chĩ peĩ ngõh t'eng, hó mà?

Cheung Sheûng-Sz: Ngõh chuê haĩ Mûng-Tâk-Leĩ Faû, Tai-Sei Kaai, Saam Hô. Pat-kwòh m-yûng-ĩ wán kà pòh.

P: Tím hui chì hó ne?

C: Neĩ chi-tò taaĩ-hòk haĩ pin shuè la. Kòh t'iu haĩ Tai-Yat Kung-Lô. Neĩ hui-tò tai-ĩ kòh hûng-lûk tang, chuèn yaũ. Haãng leũng-kòh kaai-haú, tsoi chuèn tsóh. Kwòh yat-kòh kaai-haú. Kòh t'iu tsaũ haĩ Tai-Sei Kaai. Ngõh kè uk tsaũ haĩ yaũ-shaú-pin tai-ĩ kaan.

P: Ngõh m-haĩ keĩ ming-paâk, m-haĩ keĩ ts'ing-ch'óh. Ts'ing neĩ waâk yat-kòh teĩ-t'ò peĩ ngõh t'ai, hó mà?

C: Hó à. Nã! Ngõh i-wai neĩ uẽ-kwóh chûng yaũ mân-t'ai, ts'ing neĩ mân hã ni kaan tân-yaũ t'ing\*. Pit-iù shĩ neĩ pat-fõng haĩ kòh shuè tá kòh tân-wâ\* peĩ ngõh. Ngõh tsaũ shai ch'e chut-lai tsip neĩ. Taaĩ neĩ yâp-hui, hó mà?

P: Ni koh teĩ-t'ò kòm ts'ing-ch'óh, kòm ts'eũng-sai. Ngõh seung-sùn m-ooĩ yaũ mat mân-t'ai kà là.

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 14

Capt White: Where do you live? Please tell me your address.

M/Sgt Cheung: I live at 3 Fourth Street Monterey. However, the place isn't easy to find.

W: What would be the best route of approach?

C: You know where the College is located. That would be Highway 1. When you come to the second traffic light, turn right. Travel for two blocks, turn left. Go on one block and that would be Fourth Street. My house is the second one on your right.

W: I am not quite clear. Will you kindly draw me a map?

C: Surely. Here you are! If you still have any problem in finding the place, I suggest you inquire from this service station. If it is necessary, it would be quite all right for you to give me a ring from there. I'll drive out there to meet you and to show you the way to my place.

W: This map is perfectly clear and very much in detail. I don't think I will encounter any trouble.



- 白上尉：你喺邊處住呀？你話你嘅地址俾我聽，好嗎？
- 張上士：我住喺夢特里埠第四街三號。不過唔容易搵。
- 白：點去至好呢？
- 張：你知道大學喺邊處啦。個條係第一公右路。你去到第二個紅綠燈，轉一個街行兩個街口。個條就係第二間。喺右手邊，幾明白，唔係幾個地圖俾我睇，好嗎？請你畫一個地圖！我以為你如油亭\*，有問題，你就好嗎？請你問吓呢間電個電話\*俾我去，好嗎？不妨車出黎清楚，咁詳細。我相信唔駛車出黎清楚，咁詳細。我會問也。

## READING MATERIAL

張上士請白上尉喺呢個禮拜六去佢嘅  
屋踰食飯·白上尉唔知道張上士嘅地址·  
佢而家問定先·張上士講俾白上尉知·

張上士住喺夢特里埠第四街三號·但  
係啲處好難搵嘅·所以白上尉問張上士點  
樣去啲處至好·

究竟張上士嘅屋點去嘅呢·係敢去嘅·  
第一公路上有·就轉右·行兩條街·  
第二個紅綠燈·就喺街口·張上  
士嘅屋踰一個街·就係第四街·

白上尉聽清楚·呢啲張擔果要張張  
白·唔睇吓上電牌·張上尉  
佢對問電話·帶  
白上尉以個上  
重一個重搵電車  
唔地會唔油出  
係圖有倒亭黎  
幾俾問·處接  
明白題·可打白

張上士嘅地圖畫得好清楚·好詳細·  
白上尉好明白·佢而家有乜問題啦!

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 14

QUESTIONS

Ni kòh lai-paa-lûk, pin-kòh ts'éng Paâk Sheûng-Wai shik faân à?

Paâk Sheûng-Wai chi m̄-chi-tò Cheung Sheûng-Sz kè tei-chí à?

Paâk Sheûng-Wai m̄-chi-tò Cheung Sheûng-Sz kè tei-chí; kóm, k'ui tím à?

Cheung Sheûng-Sz chuê hai pin shuê à?

Cheung Sheûng-Sz kè uk-k'eí yûng m̄-yûng-î wan à?

Kaù-kîng Tai-Sei Kaa tím huì kè ne?

Cheung Sheûng-Sz kè uk-k'eí hai Tai-Sei Kaa pin shuê à?

Cheung Sheûng-Sz kóng-chòh peí Paâk Sheûng-Wai chi, Paâk Sheûng-Wai ming m̄-ming-paâk à?

Kei-in Paâk Sheûng-Wai chûng m̄-hai keí ming-paâk, Cheung Sheûng-Sz tím à?

Cheung Sheûng-Sz chûng taam m̄-taam-sam Paâk Sheûng-Wai wán m̄-tó à?

Kóm, Cheung Sheûng-Sz kiù Paâk Sheûng-Wai tím tsô à?

Pit-iù shî, Paâk Sheûng-Wai ying-koi tím-yeûng\* tsô chi hó à?

Cheung Sheûng-Sz tsip-tó tân-wa\*, tsaû tím tsô à?

Cheung Sheûng-Sz kè tei-t'ò waâk-tak kóm ts'ing-ch'òh, kóm ts'eûng-sai. Paâk Sheûng-Wai chûng yaü m̄ m̄n-t'ai à?

## INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 14

## VOCABULARY AND NOTES

chuê to reside, to live, to dwell; verb suffix implying 'firmly, closely, fast', such as t'ai-chuê k'ui 'to stare at him, to watch him'; k'ei-chuê hai shuê 'to stand still, don't move!'

teî-chí address; dwelling place; a.f.: chuê-chí

wâ...peî ngõh t'eng tell..., tell me...to listen; a.f.: wâ...peî ngõh chí 'tell me to know', kóng...peî ngõh t'eng 'tell me... to listen, tell me'; kóng...peî ngõh chí 'tell me... to know, tell me...'

wâ peî ngõh t'eng 'tell me'

Mûng-Tâk-Leî Monterey

faû city, town, port; synonym: shêng, shing; Mûng-Tâk-Leî Faû 'City of Monterey'

taî prefix for ordinal numbers; taî-yat 'first, No. 1'; taî-î 'second, No. 2'

kaai-haú kaai 'street, road, avenue'; haú 'mouth, opening, hole, a port, speech, oral'; kaai-haú 'street intersection'

wán to look for; wán-tó 'to look for and found it'

taaî-hôk taaî 'big, large, great'; taaî-hôk 'university, college'

t'iu AN for street, road, rope, tongue, neck, tail, river

kung-lô highway; Tai-Yat Kung Lô 'Highway 1'

hûng-lûk tang hûng 'red'; lûk 'green'; hûng-lûk 'red and green'; tang 'light, lamp'; hûng-lûk-tang 'traffic light, signal light'

chuên to turn, to change, to transfer; chuên yâu 'turn to the right, to the right'; yâu-chuên 'right turn'; chuên tsóh 'turn to the left, to the left'; chòh-chuên 'left turn'; chuên-waan 'to make a turn; faan-chuên-t'au 'turn back'

kwòh to pass, to cross, to pass by; tsoi haäng-kwòh ti 'again walk past a little', kwòh here is used in the spatial sense of 'past, beyond, further'; yâu kwòh-chòh yat nin 'again there has passed a year'; kwòh 'suffix for making explicit that an action or event did happen or has happened'

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 14

pîn side, pîn 'side, part'; ni pîn 'this side, over here'; kóh pîn 'that side, over there'; pîn pîn 'which side?'; tsóh pîn 'left side, left'; tsóh-sháu pîn 'left-hand side'; yaú pîn 'right side, right'; yaú-sháu pîn 'right-hand side'; ts'in pîn 'front'; haú pîn 'rear, back, behind'; sheûng pîn 'above'; hâ pîn 'below, under'

kaan AN for houses and organizations

mîng-paâk to understand, clear, plain

ts'ing-ch'óh clear, lucid, legible, clean-cut

waâk to draw, to scrape, to strike(matches); waâk teî-t'ò 'to draw a map'

teî-t'ò map; AN: kòh, cheung, fuk

waâk peí ngõh t'ai to show me by drawing; same pattern as wâ peí ngõh t'eng, tsò peí ngõh t'ai

nā interjection for calling attention to something, there! here!

mân-t'ai problem, question, doubt, issue, dispute, trouble

mân to ask, inquire

t'ing\* pavilion, a stand, portico, arbor, summer-house; tîn-yaú t'ing\* 'gasoline station'; ch'ā t'ing\* 'tea house'; leūng t'ing\* 'pavilion, summer-house'

pit-iù shī pit-iù 'necessary, essential, indispensable, bound to, a necessity, certainly'; pit-iù shī 'if necessary, during emergency, if needed'

pat-fōng it doesn't do any harm, harmless

tá tîn-wâ\* tá 'to strike, to beat, to hit, to fetch, to make, to do, to go or to come, by way of', A common verb with many meanings; tá tîn-wâ\* 'to telephone, make a phone call'; tá kòh tîn-wâ\* 'to make a phone call'; VO construction

shái ch'e shái 'to drive (vehicle, vessel, craft); shái ch'e 'to drive car', VO construction, a.f. cha ch'e

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 14

tsip to meet, to welcome, to take with the hand, to accept, to connect, to join; tsip ch'e 'to meet some one in a railway station or bus depot'; tsip fei-kei 'to meet some one at the airport'; tsip p'aāng-yaū 'to meet and welcome a friend'; tsip tīn-wâ\* 'to answer the phone'

taaì to accompany, take guide, lead, bring with one, belt, zone

ts'eūng-sai in detail, detailed, thorough, elaborate, in minute, minutely

seung-sùn to believe, to trust, to rely on; synonym: sùn, ī-wai, koó, nám

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 15

ORAL MATERIAL

Cheung Sheûng-Szê: Leĩ Lîn-Cheúng, Cheung Sheûng-Szê pò-kò. Kím-  
uêt kè shī-haû, lîn-foô t'üng sê-koon-cheúng wâ peí ngõh  
chi, neĩ seúng kìn ngõh.

Leĩ Lîn-Cheúng: Mõ-ts'òh là. Cheung Sheûng-Szê, ts'ing-ts'òh là.

C: M̄-koi, m̄-koi.

L: Ngõh ĩ-king t'ai-kwòh neĩ kè ĩ-ling-yat kuén-tsung kaáp\*.  
Yaũ ti keĩ-lûk m̄-kìn-chòh. Yaũ ti m̄-ts'ai-ts'uên. Shòh-ĩ  
ngõh kiù neĩ lai kìn ngõh. Mân neĩ keĩ kui shuèt-wâ che.

C: Oh! Haĩ me? Hó à. Ts'ing neĩ ts'ui-pìn mân là.

L: Kan-k uĩ ni kòh yân-sê kuén-tsung kaáp\*, neĩ haĩ yat-kaú-ĩ-  
yat nìn nǎ-uêt shâp-saam yât haĩ Naú-Yeùk Shaáng, Naú-Yeùk  
Shĩ ch'ut shai. Yat-kaú-saam-paát nìn haĩ chung-hòk pat ip.  
Yat-kaú-sei-ĩ nìn haĩ taaĩ-hòk pat ip. Pat-chòh ip chi haũ,  
neĩ tsô mi-yě à?

C: Yan-waĩ tong-shī haĩ T'ai-Ī-Ts'è Shai-Kaaĩ Taaĩ-Chìn kè shī-  
haũ, shòh-ĩ ngõh pat ip chi-haũ, tá-suèn ts'üng kwan. Ying-  
koi yâp nǎ Lûk-Kwan, Hung-Kwan, Hoi-Kwan, Hoi-Kwan Lûk-Chìn-  
Tuĩ\*, yik-waák Hoi-Ngôn Fõng-Uê Tuĩ\* hó ne. King-kwòh ts'eüng-  
sai haaũ-luĩ chi haũ, ngõh k'uêt-ting yâp nǎ Lûk-Kwan.

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 15

M/Sgt Cheung: Capt. Leĩ, M/Sgt Cheung reporting, sir. I was told by the Executive Officer and the First Sergeant during the inspection that you wished to see me.

Capt Leĩ (Company Commander): That's right. Please be seated, Sgt Cheung.

C: Thank you, sir.

L: I have looked over your 201 file. Some of the records are missing and some are incomplete. That's the reason why I sent for you, and to ask you a few questions.

C: Oh, I see. Please feel free to ask me, sir.

L: According to this personnel file, you were born in New York City, N.Y. on 13 May 1921. You graduated from High School in 1938 and from College in 1942. After your graduation, what did you do?

C: That was during the World War II. When I graduated, I planned to join the military service. After careful consideration as to whether I should join Army, Air Force, Navy or Marine Corps, I decided to enlist in the Army.



張上士：李連長，張上士報告。檢閱嘅時候，你  
 候，見我。張上士官長話俾我知，你  
 想有錯啦。張上士，請坐啦。  
 李連長：唔該，唔該。你嘅二〇一卷宗夾\*。有所  
 上士：唔我已經睇過你見黎見我。有啲問你幾句說話  
 連長：啲以啫。係咩？好呀。請你隨便問。二約業業  
 上士：啊！係呢個五月廿二，你係畢業軍或慮  
 連長：根據一市一之為所該陸過軍。  
 上士：因

紀同佢，  
 的附吓佢，  
 有連見  
 叫想  
 夾佢長  
 宗連  
 卷全李  
 既齊話  
 士唔，  
 上錄知  
 張紀士  
 過咁上  
 睇有張話  
 長，俾說  
 連咗話句  
 李見長幾  
 唔官佢  
 錄士問

根嘅  
 就前  
 長以  
 連士  
 上  
 長張  
 連吓  
 李問  
 告，  
 報夾  
 去宗  
 士卷  
 上事  
 張人  
 家一  
 而。  
 一出年當打從海經  
 一市二仗算，！  
 士約四歲打打軍呢  
 上組九一，佢空隊  
 張，一十候，禦軍  
 者，二時後軍防陸  
 夾約業佢既之陸岸入  
 宗組畢，戰業伍海定  
 卷嘅學時候大咗入或決  
 事日中時界畢該抑佢  
 人三條嘅世士應，  
 一十年業次上竟隊後  
 〇月八畢二張究戰之  
 二五三第。佢陸慮  
 據年九業係要時軍考  
 根一一畢經緊當海細  
 二。學己好，詳  
 九世大時得軍軍過

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 15

QUESTIONS

Leī Līn-Cheúng t'ai-kwòh Cheung Sheûng-Sê kè î-līng-yat kuén-tsung kaâp\*meī à?

Kóh kòh kuén-tsung kaâp\* ti keī-lûk tím à?

Leī Līn-Cheúng kiù Cheung Sheûng-Sê tsô mi-yě à?

Leī Līn-Cheúng kìn-tó Cheung Sheûng-Sê kè shī-haû, tsaû kan-kui mi-yě t'ūng k'ui kóng à?

Cheung Sheûng-Sê keī shī ch'ut shai kà?

K'ui hai pin shuè ch'ut shai à?

K'ui mi-yě nīn hai chung-hôk pat îp à?

K'ui mi-yě nīn taaî-hôk pat îp à?

K'ui pat-îp kè shī-haû keī sui à?

Tong-shī hai mi-yě shī-haû à?

Cheung Sheûng-Sê pat-chóh îp chi haû, k'ui tá-suèn tsô mi-yě à?

Tong-shī k'ui hoh-ī tím tsô à?

King-kwòh ts'eûng-sai haaú-luī chi haû, k'ui k'uet-tīng tím tsô à?

## INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 15

## VOCABULARY AND NOTES

lîn-cheúng company commander

pò-kò to report, report

t'aū-sin previously, a while ago, at first; a.f.: sin-t'aū

kè shī-haū shī-haū 'time, length of time'; kè shī-haū 'when...', 'during...'

lîn-foô Company executive officer

ŝ-koon-cheúng first sergeant

kin to see, to meet, to interview; m-kin-chóh 'lost, missing, misplaced'

ts'ing-ts'òh ts'òh 'to sit, to sit down'; ts'ing-ts'òh 'please sit down, please be seated'

kuén-tsung kaàp\* kuén-tsung 'archive, records of cases, file'; kaàp 'folder, to press, to squeeze, to pick up pincers or with chopsticks'; kuén-tsung kaàp\* 'file folder, file'

keí-lûk records, recorder, to record, to place on record, honorably recorded; a.f.: keí-lûk

ts'ai-ts'uên ts'ai 'even, all, complete'; ts'ai-ts'uên 'complete, fully prepared'; m-ts'ai-ts'uên (a.f.: m-ts'ai) 'incomplete'

me interrogative particle; the interrogative particle me added to a statement changes it into a question implying surprise or incredulity; 'is it really true that...?' 'Do you mean to say that...?'

kan-kuì according to, in accordance with, to base on, basis, foundation

yān-ŝ personnel, personnel administration

Naú-Yeùk Shī Naú-Yeùk 'New-York'; shī 'city, market, fair'; Naú-Yeùk Shī 'New-York city'

ch'ut shai to be born, VO construction

chung-hôk high school, middle school

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 15

pat íp to graduate, VO construction

...chi haû after..., after this, afterwards; synonym:  
ĩ-haû

yan-waî because, since, owing to, due to

tong-shí when..., at the time of..., at that time..., that period of time, right at...that time, during the time when..., while; a.f.: kóh-chân-shí

Tai-Í Ts'ŕ Shai-Kaaí Taaí-Chín shai-kaaí 'world'; chín 'war, combat, operation, battle, campaign'; Tai-Í Ts'ŕ Shai-Kaaí Taaí-Chín 'World War II, Second World War'

ts'ung kwan to join the military service, to enlist, VO construction

king-kwòh to undergo, to pass by, to go through, to pass through; king-kwòh...chi haû 'after going through...'

haaú-luî to consider, to deliberate, to think over, to analyze; king-kwòh haaú-luî chi haû 'after thinking it over'

yâp nǝ to enlist, to induct, induction, VO construction

Lûk-Kwan Army, land forces, ground troops

Hung-Kwan Air Force

Hoi-Kwan Navy

Hoi-Kwan Lûk-Chín-Tuî\* tuî 'a group, a crowd, a band';  
Hoi-Kwan Lûk-Chín-Tuî\* 'Marine Corps'; a f.: Lûk-Chín-Tuî\*

Hoi-Ngôn Fōng-Uê Tuî\* hoi-ngôn 'coast, sea coast'; fōng-uê 'to resist, to defend'; Hoi-Ngôn Fōng-Uê Tuî\* 'Coast Guard'

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 16

ORAL MATERIAL

Leī Lín-Cheúng: Neī yâp nǎ chi haû, tsô mi-yě à?

Cheung Sheûng-Sz̄: Ngõh yâp nǎ chi haû, peī p'aaì huì san-ping fàn-lîn ch'uè shaû kei-poón fàn-lîn. Shaû-uēn kei-poón fàn-lîn chi haû, ngõh yâp haû-pó kwan-koon hôk-haaû. Pat íp chi haû, ngõh peī waí-yâm tsô shiù-wai.

L: Haû-loī tím à? Ts'ing neī kóng lôk-huì la.

C: Ngõh peī p'aaì huì Au-Chau. Chìn-Shing Au-Chau-Yât chi haû, mǎ-kei-noi\*, ngõh shing tsô chung-wai, peī p'aaì huì À-Chau. Chìn-Shing Yât-Poón Yât chi haû, ngõh shing tsô sheûng-wai. Haû-loī peī p'aaì faan-lai Meī-Kwòk.

L: Neī keī shī mǎn chik kà?

C: Ngõh hai yat-kaú-sei-lúk nǎn ts'at-uêt wíng-uē mǎn chik kè.

L: Neī lei-hoi Lúk-Kwan chi haû, neī tsô mi-yě à?

C: Ngõh hai ching-foó shuè tá kung. Ngõh hai Wā-Shing-Tún Lúk-Kwan Pô shuè tsô kung.

L: Neī hai Nḡ-Kòk Taaī-Hâ taam-yâm ti mi-yě kung-tsòk à?

C: Tong-shí ngõh hai kwan mǎn yān-uēn. Taân-hai ngõh shóh taam-yâm kè yâm-mô toh-shò hai pó-mât sz̄-hông, yaũ-uē tsuêt-tui kei-mât, kík kei-mât, kei-mât, kóm-yeûng\* kè yě.

## INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 16

Capt Lei: After you enlisted, what did you do?

M/Sgt Cheung: I was sent to a training center where I received my basic training. After that I went to the officer candidate school. Upon my completion, I was commissioned a 2nd Lt.

L: What happened then? Please continue.

C: I was assigned to Europe. Shortly after V-E Day, I was promoted to the rank of 1st Lt. I was then assigned to the Far East. After V-J Day I was promoted to Captain. After that I was transferred back to the United States.

L: When were you discharged?

C: I was honorably discharged in July 1946.

L: What did you do after you left the service?

C: I was working for the U.S. Government. I was employed by the Department of the Army in Washington.

L: What kind of work did you do in the Pentagon?

C: I was a Department of the Army civilian. The work that I was doing mostly dealt with classified matters, such as top secret, secret, confidential, and things of that nature.





INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 16

READING MATERIAL

處候委任  
訓練入被  
訓他他  
兵後後  
新後後  
去之之  
派練業  
被訓練  
後基本  
之完訓  
任受受  
入再尉  
士練校  
上訓練  
張本官  
受基本  
補軍做  
任陸

後勝他  
之戰；  
日洲完  
洲打  
歐亞  
勝去戰  
戰派大  
洲被界  
洲世翻  
歐次派  
去中二  
派做第  
被升後  
他後  
來耐日  
後耐日  
有幾本  
日升做

離打一大  
他處係角  
職政時  
免係當  
譽後工  
榮之做  
他軍處  
月陸部  
七陸軍  
年開陸  
六離頓  
四他盛  
九軍華  
一軍華  
開陸美  
工個美  
厦擔任

絕對  
有如  
事項  
有野  
密樣  
係保  
任務  
既機  
任密  
擔機  
所極  
他密  
機密

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 16

QUESTIONS

Cheung Sheûng-Sê yâp nǎ chi haû, peî p'aaî huì pin shuè shaû kei-poón fân-lîn à?

K'uĩ shaû-uēn kei-poón fân-lîn chi-haû, tsoi huì pin-shuè shaû fân-lîn à?

K'uĩ hai haû-pó kwan-koon hôk-haaû pat-chóh íp chi haû, peî wai-yâm tsô mi-yě à?

Haû-loi k'uĩ peî p'aaî huì pin shuè kung-tsòk à?

K'uĩ keí shí shing tsô chung-wai à?

K'uĩ shing-chóh tsô chung-wai chi haû, peî p'aaî huì pin shuè à?

K'uĩ keí-shí shing tsô sheûng-wai à?

Haû-loi k'uĩ yaû peî p'aaî huì pin shuè à?

K'uĩ keí shí lei-hoi Lûk-Kwan à?

K'uĩ lei-hoi-chóh Lûk-Kwan chi haû, hai pin shuè tá kung à?

Tong-shí k'uĩ hai Wā-Shîng-Tûn Nǎ-Kòk Taaî-Hâ taam-yâm ti mi-yě kung-tsòk à?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 16

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

peî by, passive voice indicator, suffer, experience

p'aaî to send, to depute, to assign, to deliver; a.f.:  
p'aaî 'political social party, association'

san-ping fân-lîn ch'uè san 'new'; ping 'soldier'; san-ping  
'recruit'; fân-lîn 'to train, training'; fân-lîn ch'uè 'training  
center, training section'; san-ping fân-lîn ch'uè 'recruit train-  
ing center'

shaû to receive, to endure, to suffer

kei-poón fân-lîn kei-poón 'basic, fundamental, foundation';  
kei-poón fân-lîn 'basic training'

Haû-Pó Kwan-Koon Hôk-Haaû haû-pó 'reserve, candidate';  
Haû-Pó Kwan-Koon Hôk-Haaû 'Officers Candidate School'

wai-yâm to empower, to appoint, to authorize, commission,  
authorization, appointment

haû-loî afterwards, later, eventually

kóng-lôk-huî to go on, to continue talking; tsô-lôk-huî  
'to continue the service, to keep working on it'

Au-Chau chau 'continent'; Au-Chau 'Europe'; Á-Chau 'Asia';  
Meî-Chau 'America'; Naâm-Meî-Chau 'South America'; Paak-Meî-Chau  
'North America'; Fei-Chau 'Africa'; Ò-Chau 'Australia'

Chîn-Shing Au-Chan-Yât shing 'victory, triumph, to win, to  
gain'; chîn-shing 'to win the war, to win the battle, to defeat  
the enemy, to defeat the opponent'; Chîn-Shing Au-Chau-Yât 'V-E  
Day'

mǎ-keí-noî not very long (time), very soon, shortly after  
...; a.f.: mǎ-keí-noî\*

shing to promote, to ascend, to advance in office, to arise

wing-uê mǎn chik mǎn 'to excuse, to exempt, to spare, to  
evade, to avoid, to forego'; chik 'official duty, office, official  
title'; mǎn chik 'to discharge from military service, to dismiss  
from official duty', VO construction; wing-uê 'honorable, honorary,  
honor'; wing-uê mǎn chik 'honorable discharge'

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 16

leī-hoi to leave, to separate, to depart, to quit, to be away

chǐng-foó government, governmental. There are three branches in the U.S. Federal Government: Hāng-Chǐng 'Executive', Lāp-Faāt 'Legislative', Sz-Faāt 'Judicial'. There are five branches in the Chinese Nationalist Government: Hāng-Chǐng 'Executive', Lāp-Faāt 'Legislative', Sz-Faāt 'Judicial', Kaam-ch'aāt 'Control', Haaú-Shí 'Examination'

tá kung to work, to have a job, to be employed, VO construction; a.f.: tsô kung, tsô s̄z, paân s̄z

Wā-Shīng-Tūn Washington

Nḡ-Kòk Taaî-Hâ kòk 'corner'; taaî-hâ 'large building'; Nḡ-Kòk Taaî-Hâ 'Pentagon'

kwan-mān yān-uēn mān 'civilian, civil, literature, language'; yān-uēn 'personnel, team workers'; kwan-mān yān-uēn 'Department of Defense civilian, Department of the Army civilian'

shóh whom, which, that which, what; shóh is an emphatic adverb, with the force of 'actually, indeed, do...' occurring always between the subject and the verb, as shóh kóng 'actually talk about, do talk about.' Because shóh is used mostly in kè constructions, which are usually translatable by relative clauses using 'whom, which, what,' it will be useful to associate shóh with such relatives, although grammatically it is still an adverb. Thus, ngōh shóh kóng kè yān 'I actually talk about man, --the man (whom) I am talking about' k'ui shóh shík kè yě 'the things (which) he eats'

yām-mô mission, assignment, task, role, duty

pó-mât s̄z-hông pó-mât 'classified, provision of security, security'; hông 'item'; s̄z-hông 'item, point, matter'; pó-mât s̄z-hông 'classified matter'

yaũ-uē for instance, for example, namely, just as...as; a.f.: hó-ts'z̄, lai-uē

tsuēt-tui kei-mât tsuēt-tui 'absolute, absolutely definitely, 100%'; kei-mât 'secret, confidential'; tsuēt-tui kei-mât 'top secret'

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 16

kîk kei-mât kîk 'extremely, very'; kîk kei-mât 'secret'

kei-mât confidential; a.f.: mât

kóm-yeûng\* kè yě things like..., things such as...

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 17

ORAL MATERIAL

Leī Līn-Cheúng: Neī keī shī faan-lai Lūk-Kwan? Keī shī heí-shaú ni ts'è kè ín-yík kà?

Cheung Sheúng-Sz: Ngõh tsz-ts'üng yat-kaú-sei-lúk nīn mīn chik chi haú, ngõh pat-lau to hai uê-peī pō-tuí\* fúk-mō, hai yat-kòh uê-peī kwan-koon---yat-kòh sheúng-wai. Hōn-Chīn faat-shaang kè shī-haú, Lūk-Kwan kiú ngõh faan-lai ín-yík.

L: Neī hai Hōn-Kwòk keī noi à?

C: Ch'a-m-toh leüng nīn kòm noi.

L: Tong-shī neī tsō mi-yě kaai-k'ap, tsō mi-yě koon-chik à?

C: Tong-shī ngõh hai sheúng-wai. Ngõh hai Tai-Paàt Kwan, Tai-Í Kwan-Tuēn, Tai-Ts'at Sz, Tai-Yat-T'uēn, Tai-Í Yīng, Kaap Līn Chí-Fai Koon.

L: Neī hai mi-yě waān-kíng chi há, peī kòng chik kà?

C: Hōn-Kwòk yau chīn chi haú, Lūk-Kwan-Pō ts'oi uēn. Hó m-hó ts'oi, ngõh hai k'ei-chung chi yat-kòh.

L: Neī chan-hai m-hāng-wān là. Neī haú-loi tím-yeúng\* à?

C: Yan-wai ngõh hai kwan-tuí\* kòm toh nīn, tong ping í-king hai ngõh kè chik-íp. Shóh-í ngõh hai Lūk-Kwan shuè kai-tsúk fúk-mō.

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 17

Capt Lei: When did you come back to the Army? When did you start to serve this tour of active duty?

M/Sgt Cheung: Since my discharge in 1946 I have continuously served in the reserve unit. I was a reserve officer --- a captain. When the Korean War broke out, I was called to active duty by the Army.

L: How long were you in Korea?

C: Almost two years.

L: What was your rank during that time? What was your duty?

C: I was a captain. I was the Commanding Officer of Company A, 2nd Battalion, 1st Regiment, 7th Division, 1st Corps, Eighth US Army.

L: Under what circumstances were you demoted?

C: After the Korean Armistice, there was a reduction in force in the Army. Unfortunately, I was included in the reduction.

L: Too bad. You were unfortunate. What happened then?

C: Since I had been in the Army for so many years, and military service had been my career, I decided to stay on in the Army.

李連長：你幾時翻黎陸軍？幾時起首呢次  
 張上士：我現役從一預備軍官，幾耐咁野，階級，做第幾團，係第一團，第八團，野軍第二營，職第甲  
 連長士：你差唔多，你做係第幾團，指揮野戰，我唔係幸運隊，咁所以  
 連長士：你韓國彩，真為我服務  
 連長士：你係第幾團，係第一團，第八團，野軍第二營，職第甲  
 連長士：你係第幾團，係第一團，第八團，野軍第二營，職第甲  
 連長士：你係第幾團，係第一團，第八團，野軍第二營，職第甲



INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 17

READING MATERIAL

張上士自從一九四六年免職之後，佢  
不啲都係預備部隊服務，係一個預備軍官，  
一個陸軍上尉。韓戰發生嘅時候，陸軍叫  
佢翻黎，做一個現役軍官。

佢係上尉，係第二營，甲連。  
階級係部團，第一團，係第二營，甲連。  
佢係部團，第一團，係第二營，甲連。  
階級係部團，第一團，係第二營，甲連。

既然佢當時係上尉，點解而家係上士  
呢？原來佢係被降職嘅呢？佢嘅經過係  
呢？原來佢係被降職嘅呢？佢嘅經過係

韓戰之後，陸軍部裁員。好唔好  
彩，佢隊咁多陸軍處服務做一個陸軍  
係繼續咁多陸軍處服務做一個陸軍  
係繼續咁多陸軍處服務做一個陸軍

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 17

QUESTIONS

Cheung Sheung-Sz tsz-tsz'ung yat-kaú-sei-lúk nin mǎn chik chí haú,  
k'uǐ pat-lau to hái pin-shuè kung-tsòk à?

K'uǐ hái uê-peí pô-tuí\* tsò ti mi-yě à?

K'uǐ keí shí faan-lái Lúk-Kwan tsò ín-yík kwan-koon kà?

K'uǐ hái Hōn-Kwok keí noi\* à?

Tong-shí k'uǐ kè kaai-k'ap hái mi-yě à?

Tong-shí k'uǐ kè koon-chik hái mi-yě à?

Tong-shí k'uǐ kè pô-tuí\* hái mi-yě à?

Hōn-Chín kè shí-haú, k'uǐ hái sheung-wai, lín-cheúng; Hōn-Chín  
chí haú, k'uǐ tím à?

Hōn-Chín chí haú, k'uǐ tím-kaai ooi peí kóng chik kà?

Tím-kaai k'uǐ kòm seúng hái Lúk-Kwan shuè tsò sz à?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 17

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

heí-shaú to begin, to commence, to start

în-yîk în 'now, the present time'; yîk 'military service, campaign, battle'; în-yîk 'active duty, active service'

tsê-ts'üng... since..., from...on, ever since...; tsê-ts'üng...chi haü 'since...'

pat-lau up to the present time, heretofore, all the time, always; synonym: yat-heung

uê-peî pô-tuî\* uê-peî 'to prepare, to get ready, to reserve'; pô-tuî\* 'unit, outfit'; uê-peî pô-tuî\* 'reserve troops, reserve unit, reserve force'

fûk-mô to serve, to work, to devote or to render service to...

uê-peî kwan-koon reserve officer; ching-kw'ai kwan-koon 'regular (Army) officer'

Hôn-Chîn Hôn 'abbreviation of Hôn-Kwòk 'Korea'; a.f.: Ko-Lai, Ch'iu-Sin. Hôn-Chîn 'Korean War'

faät-shaang to break out, to occur, to happen, to take place, outbreak, occurrence

ch'a-m-toh almost, approximately, not very different, almost the same, not far out

kaai-k'ap rank, class (social)

koon-chik koon 'officer, official'; chik 'duty, title, job'; koon-chik 'official title, official capacity, official position'

kwan-tuî\* troop, military force, army, U.S. Army Units; kwan 'army'; kwan-t'uên 'corps'; sz 'division'; t'uên 'regiment'; yíng 'battalion'; p'aaü-ping lín 'battery'; lín 'company'; p'aaü 'platoon'; paan 'squad'

Kaap first, A, chief, armor; Kaap Lín 'Company A'

chí-fai koon chí-fai 'to command'; chí-fai koon 'commanding officer, commanding general, commander'

waän-king circumstance, condition, situation, environment

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 17

hai...chi hâ under the..., under the condition or situation of...

hai...waân-kíng chi hâ under the circumstance of...

kông chik kông 'to demote, to descend, to fall, to go down, to drop'; kông chik 'to demote from the position or rank, to degrade, downgrade, VO construction'

yau chin yau (lit) 'to rest, to cease, to desist, do not'; yau chin 'truce, armistice, cease-fire, termination of hostilities'

ts'oi uên ts'oi 'to cut out, to cut off, to diminish, to reduce'; uên 'personnel, employee'; ts'oi uên 'reduction in force, to lay off'

hó-ts'oi ts'oi 'luck, fortune'; hó-ts'oi 'lucky, fortunate'; m-hó-ts'oi 'unlucky, unfortunate, unfortunately', a.f. hâng-wân

k'ei-chung chi yat k'ei-chung (lit) 'among..., in the midst of'; k'ei-chung chi yat 'one of them'

tong ping to join the military service, to be a soldier, VO construction

chik-îp profession, occupation, job

kai-tsûk to continue, to keep on

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 18

ORAL MATERIAL

Leī Līn-Cheúng: Kan-kuì neī kè keí-lûk, neī hai Tai-Ī-Ts'è Shai-Kaaī Taaī-Chìn t'ūng Hōn-Chìn kè ying-hūng. Neī tui kwòk-ka t'ūng Lûk-Kwan yaū m̄-shiú kùng-hìn, m̄-shiú kung-lō.

Cheung Sheūng-Sz: Līn-Cheúng, neī kwòh-tseúng che. Ni ti waāk-ché hai ngōh hāng-wān tak kè chi mà. M̄-chĭk-tak kóng kè.

L: M̄-hó kóm wā. Mat neī kóm haāk-hei, kóm him-hui à. Chiù ngōh poón-yān lai t'ai, neī tik-k'òk hai yat-kòh chik-ĭp kwan-yān, mō-faân kwan-yān là.

C: Ngōh ĩ-wōng kè shĭng-kung waāk-ché toh-sò hai yan-wai ngōh yaū hó kè sheūng-sz, hó kè t'ūng-liū, hó kè hā-shūk. Shóh-ĭ ooī yaū kóm che.

L: Neī tá-sheung-kwòh keí ts'è. Mooī ts'è keí-foō tá-seí. Neī kè kĭn-hong tím à?

C: Ōh, ngōh hó t'òk-laaī. Kĭn-hong hó hó. Tsui-kān hai i-uên\* kím-ĭm t'ai-kaāk. I-shaang t'ūng hon-oō wā, ngōh kè kĭn-hong fei-sheūng chi hó.

L: Hai kóm toh là. Cheung Sheūng-Sz. M̄-koi, m̄-koi.

C: M̄-shaí m̄-koi, Līn-Cheúng.

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 18

Capt Leï: According to your records, you were a World War II and Korean War hero. You have rendered meritorious and faithful service to the country and to the Army.

M/Sgt Cheung: Thank you, Captain. Perhaps I was just simply lucky. That was not worthwhile mentioning.

L: Please do not say that. You are always so modest and humble. From my point of view, you certainly are a professional soldier and a serviceman of good example.

C: Sir, perhaps much of my success in the past was due to the fact that I had some able superiors, colleagues and subordinates; without them, I would not have accomplished this.

L: You were wounded a number of times, and each time you were almost killed. How is your health?

C: Very well, sir. I am as fit as a fiddle. I had a physical examination recently, and the doctor and nurses said my physical condition was perfect.

L: That will be all, Sgt Cheung. Much obliged.

C: You are very welcome, sir.

- 李連長：根據你嘅紀錄，你係第二次世界  
 大戰軍有唔少貢獻，唔少功勞。我  
 張上士：連長，你過嘅之嗎。唔值得講嘅。  
 連長：唔好敢話。乜你咁客氣，咁謙虛呀。  
 上士：我以往嘅成功或者多數係因為我有  
 好嘅上司，好嘅同僚，好嘅下屬。  
 連長：你打傷過幾次。每次幾乎打死。你  
 嘅健康點呀？  
 上士：啊，我好託賴。健康好好。最近喺  
 醫院檢驗體格。醫生同看護話我  
 嘅健康非常之好。  
 連長：係咁多啦。張上士，唔該，唔該。  
 上士：唔使唔該，連長。

## READING MATERIAL

根據二〇一〇年大事卷宗夾嘅紀錄，張上士係第二次世界大戰同韓戰嘅英雄。佢對國家同陸軍有唔少嘅貢獻，唔少嘅功勞。

佢打傷過幾次，每次幾乎打死，但係佢而家嘅健康重好好。最近佢喺醫院處檢驗體格。醫生同看護都話佢嘅健康非常好。

佢唔祇對國家同陸軍有好大嘅貢獻同功勞；而且對佢嘅上司，同僚，下屬都好。佢又係一個好客氣，好謙虛嘅人。佢以往做得咁好，做得咁成功，多數係因為佢有好嘅上司，好嘅同僚，好嘅下屬。

照敢黎睇，佢的確係一個模範軍人，職業軍人啦。



INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 18

QUESTIONS

Cheung Sheûng-Sê hai keí-shí kè ying-hûng à?

K'uĩ tui kwòk-ka t'ûng lûk-kwan yaũ mǒ kùng-hìn, yaũ mǒ kung-lǒ à?

K'uĩ tá-sheung-kwòh keí ts'è, mooĩ ts'è sheung-tak tím à?

K'uĩ i-ka kè kîn-hong tím à?

Tsui-kân k'uĩ hui i-uên\* shuè tsô mi-yě à?

K'uĩ hai i-uên\* kím-îm t'ai-kaak kè shí-haũ, i-shaang t'ûng hon-oô tím wâ à?

K'uĩ tui kwòk-ka t'ûng lûk-kwan kòm yaũ kùng-hìn; k'uĩ tui k'uĩ kè sheûng-sz, t'ûng-liũ t'ûng hâ-shûk tím à?

K'uĩ ĩ-wǒng kè sheûng-sz, t'ûng-liũ, hâ-shûk tím à?

K'uĩ ĩ-wǒng kè shing-kung, waak-ché yan-wai mi-yě à?

Chiù kóm lai t'ai, k'uĩ hai yat-kòh tím-yeung\* kè kwan-yân à?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 18

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

ying-hūng here, núi ying-hūng 'heroine'; ying-hūng hō-kít  
(lit) hero

shíú few, a little, scarce, seldom, short of, briefly; m-shíú 'many, much, a great deal, tremendous'

kung-lō merit, meritorious service.

kwòh-tseúng tseúng 'to praise, to award prize, award, prize'; kwòh-tseúng 'undue praise'; neí kwòh-tseúng che 'ie. you overpraise me'

waák-ché perhaps, very likely, it may be that, or else, or if

chík-tak worthy, it pays, to deserve; m-chík-tak 'not worthy, it does not deserve'; m-chík-tak-kóng 'ie. no use to mention, it is not worthy of mention'

m-hó kóm wâ don't say that, please don't say this

him-hui humble, modest

poón-yān personal, oneself; synonym: tsz-keí; ngõh poón-yān 'I personally...', 'I myself'; ngõh tsz-keí 'I myself'

chiù...laí t'ai in view of...; chiù ngõh poón-yān laí t'ai 'from my point of view'

tik-k'òk definitely, certainly, undoubtedly, out of question

mō-faân exemplary, example, model, pattern

ī-wǒng bygone days, in the past, formerly; synonym: ī-ts'in, ts'ūng-ts'in

sheung-sz superior, supervisor

t'ūng-liū colleague, co-worker; a.f.: t'ūng-sz

hâ-shûk subordinate

sheung wounded, hurt, wound, injury; tá-sheung 'to be wounded through battle, fighting, or beating'

mooí each, every

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 18

seí to die, dead, death; tá-seí 'to die through battle, fighting, or beating'

kîn-hong health, healthy

t'òk-laaî IE, blessed, well, fine

tsuí-kân tsuí 'superlative degree, the most...'; tsuí-kân 'most recently, lately, recently'

i-uên\* hospital, dispensary.

kím-îm t'ai-kaàk kím-îm (kím-ch'ā) 'to examine, to inspect'; t'ai-kaàk 'physical condition, body, physique'; kím-îm t'ai-kaàk 'physical examination'; a.f.: kím-ch'ā t'ai-kaàk, t'ai-kaàk kím-ch'ā, t'ai-kaàk kím-îm

i-shaang physician, medical doctor, medical practitioner, surgeon

hon-oô nurse

fei-sheung chi extremely, exceedingly; a.f.: kîk, kîk chi, chi kîk

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 19

ORAL MATERIAL

Cheung Sheûng-Szê: Ni kòh lai-paaì-lûk, lai-paaì, ngõh-teî yaũ hó toh yě tsô. Ngõh seung-sùn tsui hó kè paân-faàt waāk-ché hai chàp-chuê hai yat-cheung chí shuè. Kóm tsaũ, yat-yeûng to m-ooĩ mōng-kei, yat-yeûng to m-ooĩ kaaú luên là.

Cheung T'aai-T'aai\*: Tui là. Neĩ yat-lô kóng, ngõh yat-lô chàp tai, hó mà?

Sheûng-Szê: T'ing-yât lai-paaì-lûk, chiu-t'aũ-tsó, ngõh tá-suèn t'üng ti sai-man-tsaí waán hã, taaì k'uĩ-teî wân-tüng hã. Hã-chau ngõh seúng huì maaĩ ti yě. T'ing-maãn ngõh-teî ts'ing haäk. Neĩ ne?

T'aai-T'aai\*: Yan-wai t'ing-maãn ts'éng haäk, ngõh iù huì tsaáp-fòh p'ò\* maaĩ sùng. Ngõh ooĩ hó m-tak-haãn kà là.

Sheûng-Szê: Hâu-yât lai-paaì ne? Ngõh-teî tsô mi-yě hó ne?

T'aai-T'aai\*: Ngõh-teî ying-koi huì lai-paaì-t'ōng tsui-tsaáp. Hã-nǝ ngõh-teî huì yaũ hã ch'e-hōh\*, kìn hã p'aāng-yaũ, wán k'uĩ-teî ts'ōh hã, k'ing hã, hó mà?

Sheûng-Szê: Hó à, mooĩ-füng lai-paaì, ngõh-teî pat-lau to hai kóm tsô, i-king yeüng-shing yat-chung leüng-hó kè tsaáp-kwaàn.

T'aai-T'aai\*: Taân-faãn tsô szê, uē-kwóh uē-sin yaũ sin-kìn chí ming, ts'uēn-p'oōn kai-waāk, tò shī yaũ hai-t'úng kóm tsô, tsaũ m-ooĩ shoh-uē, m-ooĩ lún-chün, m-ooĩ pa-pai kà là.

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 19

M/Sgt Cheung: We have quite a number of things to do this weekend. Perhaps the best thing is to jot them down on a piece of paper, so that we won't forget any item or get confused.

Mrs. Cheung: You are absolutely right. I'll jot down the items as you mention them.

M/Sgt: Tomorrow, Saturday morning, I plan to spend some time with the children and do some exercises with them. In the afternoon I have some shopping to do. Tomorrow night we'll have to give a party. How about you? What do you plan to do?

Mrs: Since we have to give a party tomorrow night, I'll have to go to buy some groceries. I'll be very busy.

M/Sgt: How about the day after tomorrow, Sunday. What shall we do?

Mrs: We should go to church. In the afternoon we'll go for a ride and visit some friends. How about it?

M/Sgt: It is all right with me. We have been doing this every Sunday. This has become a routine and has developed into a matter of habit---a good habit, I may say.

Mrs: Whenever a person is doing something, and if he will exercise his foresight, plan ahead, and systematically do it, then he won't overlook anything, be confused, or get into trouble.

- 張上士：呢個禮拜六，禮拜，我地有好多  
 野做。我相信最好嘅辦法或者係  
 割住喺一張紙處，敢就一樣都唔  
 會忘記，一樣都唔會攪亂啦。
- 張太太：對啦，你一路割低，  
 好嗎？
- 上士：聽日禮拜六，朝頭早，我打算同啲細  
 佢仔玩吓，帶地運動吓。下晝  
 我想去買啲野。聽晚我地請客。
- 太太：因為聽晚請客，我要去雜貨舖買餸。  
 我會好唔得閒，我哋地做乜野呢？
- 上士：後日禮拜呢？我哋地做乜野呢？  
 太太：我哋應該去禮拜堂聚會，下午我哋  
 去遊吓車河，傾吓好嗎？搵佢地  
 去坐吓，每逢禮拜，我哋地都係  
 好呀。每已逢經養成一種良好嘅習  
 慣，但凡事計劃，預先有系統，唔  
 會疏虞，就係做嘢。

## READING MATERIAL

呢個禮拜六張上士請客，禮拜又會有好多野要做，到時佢同張太太會好忙，佢唔想到時咁論，吧，所以佢而家決定好全盤計劃。

佢以為最好嘅辦法係割住所有嘅野，敢樣就一樣都唔會忘記，一樣都唔會攪亂。

佢叫張太太擰一張紙黎；佢一路講，張太太一路割低，佢所割低嘅係敢。

聽日禮拜六朝頭早，張上士打算同的細伙仔去玩吓，帶佢地去運動吓，下晝佢想去買嘢，張太太聽日要去雜貨舖買餸，佢聽日會好唔得閒，聽晚佢地請客。

後日係禮拜，根據佢地以往嘅習慣，佢地每逢禮拜嘅時候，上午佢地去教堂聚集，下午去遊車河，見吓朋友，搵佢地坐吓，傾吓，佢地不啱都係敢樣做，已經養成咗一種習慣啦。

佢地敢樣做係好嘅，但凡做事，如果有先見之明，預先定好全盤計劃；到時有

系統敢做，就唔會疏忽，唔會論噃，唔會  
吧喇嘅。



INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 19

QUESTIONS

Cheung Sheûng-Sz keí shí ts'ing haàk à?

K'ui tím-kaai í-ka iù k'uèt-ting ts'uên-p'oôn kai-waak à?

K'ui tím-kaai kiù Cheung T'aaí-T'aaí\* chaap tai shóh yaú kè yě à?

T'ing-yat lai-paaí lûk chiu-t'aü-tsó, Cheung Sheûng-Sz tá suèn tsô ti mi-yě à?

T'ing-yat hâ-ngě, k'ui seúng hui pin shuè à?

T'ing-maän k'ui-teí iù ts'ing-haàk, Cheung T'aaí-t'aaí\* ting-yat iù tsô ti mi-yě à?

Kan-kui k'ui-teí í-wõng kè tsaáp-kwaän, mooí-fung lai-paaí kè shí-haü, sheung-ngě k'ui-teí hui pin shuè à?

Lai-paaí-yat hâ-ngě, k'ui-teí ooí hui pin-shuè à?

Taän-faän tsô sz, uê-kwóh yaú sin-kín chi ming, uê-sin ting-hó ts'uên-p'oôn kai-waak, tò shí yaú hai-t'úng hui tsô, kóm yeung\* hó m-hó à?

## INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 19

## VOCABULARY AND NOTES

paân-faàt method, ways, means; synonym: fong-faàt, faàt-tsú, faàt

chaáp-chuê chaáp 'to record, to put down, to jot down'; chaáp-chuî 'to jot down, to put down, to keep record'

yat-yeûng the same kind, alike, each kind, anyone; ni kaan uk t'üng kóh kaan uk yat-yeûng 'this house is the same as that'; ngòh t'üng k'uî yat-yeûng kóm ko 'I am as tall as he', ngòh yat-yeûng to m-maai 'I won't buy anyone of them'

yat-yeûng to indefinite pronoun, any, anyone; the indefinite pronoun (pin kòh, pin shuè, mi-yě, tím-yeûng\*, kei shí) is identical in form with the corresponding interrogative; thus: pin? 'which?', pin 'any'; pin-kòh? 'who?', pin-kòh to 'anyone'; mi-yě 'what?', mi-yě to 'anything'; tím-yeûng\* 'how?', tím-yeûng\* to 'no matter how'; kei shí 'when?', kei shí to 'anytime, whenever'

mông-kei to forget, to neglect; a.f.: m-kei-tak; yat-yeûng to m-ooi mông-kei 'won't forget anything'

kaaú luên to mix up, to confuse, to make a mistake, to err

yat-lô...yat-lô while...at the same time; yat-lô 'all the way'

chaáp tai tai 'low, down'; chaáp tai 'to jot down, to put down, to keep record, to keep track'; a.f.: chaáp-chuê

chiu-t'aü-tsó morning, early morning; synonym: chiu-tsó, chiu, tsó

waán hă waán 'to play, to have fun'; waán hă 'to play'

wân-tûng sport, athletics, propaganda movement, movement, to exercise

ts'ing haák to invite guests for dinner or party; a.f.: ts'éng haák

tak-haân to be free, to have leisure, not busy; synonym: m-mông; m-tak-haân 'busy, not free'

lai-paai-t'ōng church; a.f.: kaaú-t'ōng

tsuî-tsaáp religious service, assembly, meeting

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 19

yaū ch'e-hōh\* yaū 'to tour, to travel'; yaū ch'e-hōh\*  
'to take a pleasure ride, to go driving

k'ing hǎ to chat; ts'ōh hǎ k'ing hǎ 'to sit and chat'

mooī-fūng fūng 'to meet with, to happen, to hit on, when-  
ever'; mooī-fūng 'whatever, wherever, whenever, however'; a.f.  
fūng-ts'an, synonym: taân-faân

yeūng-shīng yeūng 'to nourish, to feed, to rear, to sup-  
port, to bring up'; yeūng-shīng 'to rear, to form, to pattern'

leūng-hó leūng 'excellent, good, fine, well-bred, refined';  
leūng-hó 'excellent, good, fine, well-bred, refined'

tsaâp-kwaân habit, custom, to accustom to; yeūng-shīng  
yat-chúng leūng-hó kè tsaâp-kwaân 'to form a good habit'

taân-faân whatever, whenever, however, all

uê-sin beforehand, prior to, before, previous

sin-kìn chi mīng far-seeing, foresight, foreseeing

ts'uēn-p'oōn kai-waâk ts'uēn-p'oōn 'entire, entirely';  
kai-waâk 'plan, planning, scheme, plot, design'; ts'uēn-p'oōn  
kai-waâk 'the whole plan, the entire planning'

tò shī when the time comes, until then

haî-t'úng system; yaū haî-t'úng 'systematic, organized'

shoh-uē carelessness, negligence, heedlessness, loophole,  
omission

lûn-chûn clumsy, awkward, disorderly, confused, trouble

pa-pai clamor, to get excited, to get panicky

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 20

ORAL MATERIAL

Cheung Sheûng-Sz̄: Ī-ka ngõh-teī t'ai-uēn ts'o, wân-uēn tûng.

Neī kòk-tak tím à?

À-Tsai: Tsing-shān kòk-tak hó hó. Shan-t'ai kòk-tak kwoōi ti.

Sheûng-Sz̄: Taân-faān yat-kòh yān, uē-kwóh iù yaũ kîn-ts'uēn kè s̄z-îp, yat-tîng iù yaũ k'eūng-kîn kè t'ai-p'aàk. Uē-kwóh iù yaũ k'eūng-kîn kè t'ai-p'aàk, yat-tîng iù shī-shī tuēn-lîn shan-t'ai.

À-Tsai: Ni kòh tô-leī yān-yān to ying-koi chi-tò kè. Shóh-wai kaaü-yûk paau-k'oòt tak-yûk, chì-yûk, t'ai-yûk, kw'ān-yûk---tak, chì, t'ai, kw'ān, sei yûk---fàn-lîn yān kè sam shan, tuēn-lîn yān kè t'ai chì.

Sheûng-Sz̄: Neī tui-ue ô-ngoī wân tûng t'ūng ô-noī wân tûng to yaũ hîng-ts'ui, yaũ-k'eī-shī tui-ue t'in kîng wân tûng hó yaũ shîng-tsik...

À-Tsai: Ōh, pat-kwòh yeûng-yeûng to shī hã, hôk hã che. Ngõh hei-mông hoh-ĩ hôk toh ti kwaan-ue ô-ngoī wân tûng, ô-noī wân tûng, t'in kîng wân tûng, ts'oi k'aũ wân tûng, ni ti kóm-yeûng\* kè keī-shût. Neī tak-haān kaaü hã ngõh, hó mà?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 20

M/Sgt Cheung: Now that we have finished doing our exercises  
how do you feel, son?

Junior: I feel fine. A little bit tired, though.

M/Sgt: If a person would like to do well in his business, he  
should be mentally alert and physically fit. In order that  
he may be physically fit, he should often do exercises.

Jr: This is one principle that every one should know. Education  
includes moral, academic, physical, and social training.  
These four things are to train a person's body and mind.

M/Sgt: You have shown a great deal of interest in outdoor and  
indoor sports, especially in track and field, in which you  
have proved yourself to be quite capable...

Jr: That was because I like to try and learn everything. I  
hope I'll be able to learn more about the techniques pertain-  
ing to outdoor and indoor sports, track and field, ball  
games, and things of that sort. When you are not so busy,  
you can teach me. How about it?

張上士：而家我地體完操，運完動。你覺  
得點呀？

亞仔：精神覺得好好。身體覺得癢的。  
上士：但凡一個人，如果要有健全的事業，  
一定要強健。強健既體魄，一定都要時時鍛鍊身體。  
亞仔：呢個道理人都應該知道。所謂群訓

教育包括德育，體群，四育——訓  
練人既心身，鍛鍊人既體智。都有興成

上士：你對於戶外運動同戶內運動都好有  
興趣，尤其是對於田徑運動好有有成  
績……

亞仔：啊，不過樣樣都試吓，學吓啫。我  
希望內運動，樣樣都多田徑技術。你  
呢啲敢樣呢？

但凡一個人，如果事業成功，一定先要有強健嘅體魄。如果要有強健嘅體魄，一定都要強時鍛鍊身體。呢個係一定嘅道理，係人人都應該知道嘅。

教育包括好多野，最緊要嘅係四育，練家德育，智育，體育，群育，所以緊要教於個人。德育，智育，體育，群育，所以緊要教於個人。德育，智育，體育，群育，所以緊要教於個人。

講到體育，體育亦都包括好多種，有運動學運動，內關於時戶外運動，內好。體育亦都包括好多種，有運動學運動，內關於時戶外運動，內好。體育亦都包括好多種，有運動學運動，內關於時戶外運動，內好。

佢地雖然好瘡，但係覺得精神好好。

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 20

QUESTIONS

Yat-kòh yān uē-kwóh seúng s̄-îp shīng-kung, sin iù yaũ mi-yě à?

Uē-kwóh iù yaũ k'eūng-kīn kè t'ai-p'aak, yat-tīng iù tím à?

Kaaù-yūk paau-k'oòt hó toh yě, tsui kán-iù kè haĩ mi-yě à?

Kaaù-yūk hók-ĩ fàn-līn yat-kòh yān kè mi-yě à?

T'ai-yūk paau-k'oòt ti mi yě à?

À-tsaĩ tui-ue oô-ngoĩ wān tūng t'ūng oô-noĩ wān tūng yaũ mǒ hīng-ts'ui à?

K'ui kè t'īn kīng wān tūng kè shīng-tsik hó m-hó à?

K'ui hei-mōng hók-ĩ toh hōk ti mi-yě wān tūng à?

K'ui seúng pin-kòh kaaù k'ui wān tūng à?

K'ui t'ūng Cheung Sheūng-S̄ i-ka t'ai-uēn ts'o, k'ui-teĩ kòk-tak tím à?



INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 20

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

- t'ai' ts'o physical drill, physical exercise
- kòk-tak to feel, to find, to find that...
- tsing-shān spirit, energy, vitality, morale
- shan-t'ai' body, health, physical condition
- kwooî tired, weary, weak
- kîn-ts'uēn healthy, strong, sound, robust, well-organized;  
synonym: kîn-hong, k'eūng-kîn, k'eūng-chông
- s̄-îp career, business
- k'eūng-kîn strong, healthy, robust; synonym: kîn-hong,  
k'eūng-chông, k'eūng, chông
- t'ai'-p'aāk health, physical well-being, body; synonym: san-  
t'ai', p'aāk-lîk
- shī-shī to constantly, from time to time, always, often;  
shī 'time'; shī-shī to, shī is duplicated meaning 'everytime, al-  
ways, constantly, often'
- tuēn-lîn to discipline, to make perfect, to forge metal  
from which comes the idea of discipline, to make strong; tuēn-lîn  
shan-t'ai' 'physical culture, physical training'
- tô-leī principle, reason, doctrine, rights of things, cause,  
theory
- yān-yān to yān 'people, person, human beings'; yān-yān to,  
yān is duplicated meaning 'everyone, every person, any person'
- shóh-waī waī (lit) 'to say, to tell'; shóh-waī 'so called,  
what is called, so to speak'
- kaaù-yûk yûk 'culture, to give birth to, to nourish, to  
bring up'; kaaù-yûk 'education, to educate'; kaaù-yûk ka, 'educa-  
tor'
- paau-k'oòt to include, inclusion, including, to consist  
of
- tak-yûk tak 'moral, morals, virtue'; tak-yûk 'moral education';  
abbreviation: tak

chì-yûk chì 'wisdom, wit, intellectual, intelligent'; chì-yûk 'intellectual education, academic education'; abbreviation: chì

t'ai-yûk t'ai 'body', abbreviation of shan-t'ai; t'ai-yûk 'physical education', abbreviation: t'ai

kw'ân-yûk kw'ân 'flock, herd, multitude, mob, all'; kw'ân-yûk 'social education'; abbreviation: kw'ân

sam shan sam 'mind, heart, affection, center, mental'; shan 'body, trunk'; sam shan 'mind and body, mental and physical'; a.f.: shan sam 'body and mind, physical and mental'

t'ai chì t'ai abbreviation of shan-t'ai 'body, physical'; chì 'wisdom mind, intellectual, mental'; t'ai chì 'body and mind, physical and mental'

ô-ngoî wân tung, ô-noî wân tung ô 'house, home, gate, door'; ngoî 'outside, out, external'; ô-ngoî 'outdoor'; ô-ngoî wân tung 'outdoor sports'; noî 'inside, in, internal'; ô-noî 'indoor'; ô-noî wân tung 'indoor sports'; ô-ngoî wân tung t'ung ô-noî wân tung 'outdoor sports and indoor sports'

hing-ts'ui personal interest, hobby, inclination, merriment, pleasure; yaü hing-ts'ui 'interested in; tui-ue...yaü hing-ts'ui 'interested in...'

t'in king wân tung t'in 'field, rice paddy'; king 'track, path'; t'in king wân-tung 'field and track sports'

shing-tsik grade, results, accomplishment

yeung-yeung to yeung 'a kind, a style, a sort, a pattern, a sample, a manner'; yeung-yeung to, yeung is duplicated meaning 'every kind'

shì to try, to test, to experiment, to examine, to detect, to taste, a test

hei-mông to hope, to look forward, hope; yaü hei-mông 'hopeful'; mô hei-mông 'hopeless'

kwaan-ue in regard to, relating to, concerning, in connection with; synonym: tui-ue, tui

ts'oi k'au wân tung ts'oi 'to contest, to compete, to rival,

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 20

to match, to race, to contend for mastery'; k'aū (lit) 'ball';  
ts'oi k'aū wân tūng 'ball games'

keî-shût      technics, skill, art, expertness, sleight of hand

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 21

ORAL MATERIAL

Cheung Sheung-Sz: Kam-yât hai neĩ mã-ma kè shaang-yât. Yaũ hai neĩ pā-pa t'ũng mã-ma kit fan kè keĩ-nĩm yât. Ngõh-teĩ maaĩ kĩn mi-yě lai-mât sùng peĩ k'uĩ hó ne?

À-Tsai: Ni kaan paak-fòh kung-sz kw'ai-mō kòm taaĩ. Sùn-yũng yaũ hó. Fòh-mât kòm toh. Kà-ts'in yaũ kung-tô. Poón-teĩ fòh keĩ-in-chi toh, loi-lô\* fòh yik-to m-shiú. Ying yaũ tsũn yaũ. Ngõh-teĩ tím-kaaĩ m-tsaũ hai shuè maaĩ ti lai-mât ne?

Sheung-Sz: Tsaũ hai yan-wai ni kaan kung-sz paau lōh maan yaũ, ch'a-m-toh mi-yě to yaũ-tak maaĩ, shóh-ĩ fa toh ngaan luên. Kaaú-tò ngõh to m-chi tím-suên hó, maaĩ mi-yě chì hó.

À-Tsai: Sùng yě peĩ nuĩ-yān\* peĩ-kaaù sùng yě peĩ naām-yān\* naan-tak toh là. Ngõh tsik-koón t'ai-ĩ keĩ tím, hó mà? Fà-chong-pán à, i-fúk à, yât-sheung yung-pán à, ka-t'ing yung-kuĩ à, chue-uē-ts'z-lui\* kè yě.

Sheung-Sz: Ā, ngõh nám-tó là. Ngõh-teĩ haang-kwòh huĩ shaú-shik pō t'ai hã. Uē-kwóh yaũ ming-kwai i ngõh-teĩ chung-ì kè yě maaĩ, p'ēng t'ũng kwai to pat-shing man-t'ai là.

## INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 21

M/Sgt Cheung: Today is your mother's birthday, and, at the same time, it is your father's and mother's wedding anniversary. Let's buy your mother a present; how about it?

Junior: This is a good store. It is well-established and reliable. It has all kinds of merchandise for sale, and the prices are considered reasonable. Not only does it carry many local products, but also plenty of imported goods. You name it, and they have it. Why don't we buy it here?

M/Sgt: Just because it carries a complete line of everything, I am all confused as to what I should get and what I should buy.

Jr: Buying a gift for a woman is definitely more difficult than buying one for a man. Anyway, let me make a couple of suggestions. How about cosmetics, wearing apparel, daily necessities, household goods, and things of that kind?

M/Sgt: Say, I have an idea. Let us walk over to the jewelry department and take a look. If there is anything exquisite that we like, money is no object.

- 張上士：今日係你媽媽嘅生日。又係你爸買  
 亞仔：呢間貨物咁多，我媽結婚送規價來地。媽嘅俾模錢路點解。生日念好大公公亦唔  
 上士：就係多攪好。野牌女我即，具倒果同。比管衣呀，名都。較提議呀，諸我貴不。送野幾，如地而成。俾點日此行我問。男，常類過地題。人好用嘅去中啦。難嗎品野首意。得？呀。飾部野。唔亂至。差眼野。多也。有花買。萬以，羅所好。包，算。司賣點。公得知。間有唔。呢都。為野我到。係多攪好。就係多攪好。送野啦裝家睇賣。



INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 21

QUESTIONS

Kam-yât haî lai-paai lûk, haî pin-kòh kè shaang-yât à?

Kam-yât haî pin-kòh kè kit fan keí-nîm yât à?

Cheung Sheûng-Sz t'ûng à-tsaí tá m-tá-suèn sùng ti yě peí Cheung T'aaí-T'aaí\* à?

Kaù-kîng sùng yě peí nuí-yân\* naân ti, yik-waâk sùng yě peí naâm-yân\* naân ti à?

K'uí-teî í-ka huì pin-shuè maaí yě?

Kóh kaan paák-fòh kung-sz tím à?

Yan-waí kóh shuè ti yě t'aaí toh, kaaú-tò Cheung Sheûng-Sz tím à?

Cheung Sheûng-Sz m-k'uèt-tak tîng, à-tsaí t'ai-í maaí ti mi-yě à?

Haû-loí k'uí k'uèt-tîng haâng-kwòh huì shaú-shik pô, k'uí seúng wán ti mi-yě à?

Uē-kwóh kóh ti shaú-shik t'aaí kwai, k'uí maaí m-maaí à?



## INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 21

## VOCABULARY AND NOTES

lai-mât lai 'gift, present'; mât 'thing, article, object';  
lai-mât 'gift, present'; AN: kîn

sùng to give to, to present to, to escort, to send, to deliver; sùng lai 'to give a present'; a.f. sùng yě, sùng lai-mât; sùng lai mât (peí) k'ui 'to give a present to him, to give him a present', the direct object lai-mât must be placed before the indirect object k'ui, never sùng k'ui lai-mât

paak-fòh kung-sz fòh 'merchandise, goods, cargo'; paak-fòh 'miscellaneous merchandise, all items of merchandise'; kung-sz 'company, store, firm'; paak-fòh kung-sz 'department store'

kw'ai-mō scale, model, pattern; kw'ai-mō taaî 'scale is large'; taaî kw'ai-mō 'large scale'; siú kw'ai-mō 'small scale'

sùn-yung credit, reliability, dependability; sùn-yung hó 'credit is good, reliable, dependable'

fòh-mât merchandise, goods, cargo; synonym: fòh

kà-ts'in kà 'price, cost'; kà-ts'in 'price, cost'

kung-tô fair, reasonable, equitable; kà-ts'in kung-tô 'price is fair, price is reasonable'

poón-teî fòh poón (lit) 'this, local, indigenous, original'; poón yān 'oneself'; poón haaû 'this school, my school'; teî 'place, land, area, soil, ground, floor'; poón-teî 'local place, indigenous place, domestic'; poón-teî fòh 'local product, domestic product, local goods, local merchandise'

kei-in-chi since; a.f: kei-in; Cf: kei-in IU 12

loi-lô\* fòh loi-lô\* 'foreign, imported, from foreign country, from abroad'; loi-lô\* fòh 'imported goods'

ying yaũ tsũn yaũ ying abbreviation of ying-koi 'should, ought to'; tsũn 'all, entire, end, exhaust'; ying yaũ tsũn yaũ (lit) 'there is everything you need, there is every item of merchandise a store should carry'

hai shuè on the spot, over there, here; synonym: hai ni shuè, hai kóh shuè, hai tô, hai ni tô, hai kóh tô

paau lōh maân yaũ paau lōh 'to include'; paau lōh maân yaũ (lit) 'practically everything is available'

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 21

fa toh ngaân luên fa 'flower'; ngaân 'eyes'; luên 'to confuse, to mix up, disorder, untidy, chaotic'; fa toh ngaân luên (lit) 'confusion caused by too many items'.

kaaú-tò to cause, to end up in, to result in; kaaú-tò hó lûn-tsûn 'all mixed up'; kaaú-tò ngōh to m-chi tím-suên-hó 'made me not know what to do'; synonym: lîng-tò

pei-kaaú pei 'to compare with, than'; k'ui pei ngōh ko 'he is taller than I'; pei-kaaú 'to compare with, than'; k'ui pei-kaaú ngōh ko 'he is taller than I'; pei, kaaú, and pei-kaaú are interchangeable

tsik-koón as one wishes; nei tsik-kón kóng la! 'you go ahead and say it', 'you say as you wish'

t'ai ĩ t'ai 'to bring up, to call attention to'; t'ai ĩ 'to suggest, to propose, to present an idea, suggestion, proposition, VO construction; nei tsik-koón t'ai ĩ 'you suggest as you wish', 'you go ahead and suggest'; synonym: kín ĩ; t'ai ĩ keí tím 'to suggest a few points'

fà-chong-pán fà chong 'to disguise, to make up with cosmetics', VO construction; pán 'things, articles, things classified, degree, rank, conduct', synonym: mât-pán; fà-chong-pán 'cosmetics'

i-fûk i 'clothes, coat, clothing'; fûk 'uniform, clothing, clothes'; i-fûk (lit) 'clothes, costumes, wear, clothing'

yât-sheūng yûng-pán yât-sheūng 'daily, ordinary, usual, routine'; yûng-pán 'articles in ordinary use'; yât-sheūng yûng-pán 'articles in daily use'; a.f.: yât-yûng-pán

ka-t'ing yûng-kuî ka-t'ing 'family, household', synonym: ka; yûng-kuî 'tools, implement', synonym: kuŋ-kuî, hei-kuî; ka-t'ing yûng-kuî 'household goods, things to be used around the house'

chue-uē-ts'z-luî\* luî 'category, a kind, a class, a species, to resemble'; chue-uē-ts'z-luî\* kè yě 'things like that, things such as...'

nám 'to think, to consider, to figure out, to call to mind'; synonym: seung; nám-tó 'to have figured out, to be able to figure out, to get a solution'

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 21

sháu-shik pō sháu-shik 'jewelry'; pō 'department, section, ministry'; sháu-shik pō 'jewelry department'

mīng-kwài valuable, exquisite, exclusive, expensive

î (lit) and, still, yet, also, but, nevertheless, like as;  
synonym: î-ch'é, taân-hai, pat-kwôh

chung-î to like, to prefer, to be fond of

maai to sell

p'ēng cheap, inexpensive, reasonable in price

kwai expensive, unreasonable in price

pat-shīng mân-t'ai no problem, out of the question, it doesn't matter

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 22

ORAL MATERIAL

Maaî-Fòh-Uēn: Sin-shaang, yaũ mat pong-ch'àn à?

Cheung Sheûng-Sz̄: Táng ngõh t'ai hã sin la.

Maaî: Ngõh-teî yaũ ti tsui-kân wân-tò kè ming-kwai shaú-piu.

Ni chúng hai kam kè. Ni chúng hai paák kam kè. Ni chúng hai tsuèn-shêk kè.

Sheûng-Sz̄: M̄-koi neĩ peĩ ngõh t'ai hã.

Maaî: Ni kòh hai tsuèn-shêk paák kam piu. T'iu piu-lîn\* kè pò-shêk\* yik-to hai tsuèn-shêk lai kè.

Sheûng-Sz̄: Ni kòh keĩ toh ts'in\* à?

Maaî: Saam-paák kaú-shâp kaú-kòh kaú hō poòn. Ni kòh piu ying-chan ming-kwai taaî-fong là. T'üng-shī yaũ hai ming ch'óng chai kè. Kei-kîn\* taam-pó shâp nîn.

Sheûng-Sz̄: Lêng m̄-hai m̄-lêng, pat-kwòh kà-ts'in kwai ti che. Ngõh seung-sùn to chik-tak kè\*. Ngõh tsaũ kòm maaî-chòh k'ui là.

Maaî: Neĩ chan-hai yaũ ngaân-kwong là, sin-shaang. Ni kòh piu saam-paák kaú-shâp kaú kòh kaú hō poòn. Lîn seĩ-shing shui, tsung-kung seĩ paák yat-shâp ng-kòh kaú hō poòn.

Sheûng-Sz̄: Ngõh mō kòm toh in-foón hai shan shuè pòh. Sé cheung chik-chí peĩ neĩ, hó mà?

Maaî: Neĩ yaũ ching-ming shue mō ne, sin-shaang?

Sheûng-Sz̄: Shan-fân ching-ming shue t'üng ch'e p'aaĩ shī-taân yat-yeung, tak mà?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 22

Salesman: Sir, may I help you?

M/Sgt: I'm just looking around.

Sales: We have a new shipment of beautiful watches. This one is gold. This is white gold. This is a diamond watch.

M/Sgt: Please let me take a look.

Sales: This is a diamond platinum watch. The stones on the band are also diamonds.

M/Sgt: How much is it?

Sales: \$399.95. This is indeed a gorgeous and a beautiful watch. Besides, it is a well known brand. The mechanism is guaranteed for ten years.

M/Sgt: Not that it is not pretty, it is a bit expensive. Well, I believe it is worth that much. I'll take it.

Sales: Sir, you made a smart selection. This is a good buy. That will be \$399.95 and 4% tax, a total of \$415.95.

M/Sgt: I don't carry a large sum of cash on my person. May I give you a check?

Sales: Do you have any identification, Sir?

M/Sgt: ID card and driver's license. Would one of them do?

賣張賣：貨上：員士：先生，有乜幫襯呀？  
 賣張賣：員士：先生，睇吓先運到嘅名貴手鏢。呢種係  
 員士：地有係鑽石嘅。睇吓最近呢種係白金嘅。呢種係  
 上賣：士：唔該你俾我睇吓。條鏢鍊嘅寶石亦  
 上賣：士：呢個係鑽石鑽多錢呀？毛半。呢個鏢認真名  
 上賣：士：三百九十九，大個方保十年。同時又係名廠製  
 上賣：士：靚唔係信有眼光個九百一十款嗎？先生？  
 賣：你真係有十四百多現款嗎？先生？  
 上賣：士：我有俾你證明書有呢，先生？  
 上賣：士：你係有身份證明書同車牌是一樣，得嗎？

部飾首嘅公司貨百間個到去士上張  
 部飾首嘅公司貨百間個到去士上張  
 部飾首嘅公司貨百間個到去士上張

的嘅鍊名員半；  
 有石鏢係貨毛  
 鑽條又賣九半  
 鏢係個時問個毛  
 手嘅連同佢九九  
 貴有鏢方鏢九十個  
 名，鏢大個百十五  
 嘅嘅石大個百十五  
 到金鑽貴個三一  
 運白金名意，百  
 近係白真中話四  
 最的個認好員共  
 的有一，佢貨總  
 有，倒嘅賣，  
 處嘅睇石嘅稅  
 個金士鑽造錢成  
 係張都廠幾連  
 係張都廠幾連

一個或以寫慣，佢  
 一個，佢習用  
 係，佢就  
 所以，司士  
 個所後款司士  
 個係之現公上  
 係保考慮多間張  
 但擔考咁個  
 ，既細有據書  
 高年詳上根明  
 幾十過身，証  
 錢有經佢員有明  
 價又，貨要証  
 個，貴買賣，做  
 呢鏢太得俾紙黎  
 然嘅係值紙是証  
 雖貴唔係是俾份  
 名都都張野身  
 好者為一買嘅

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 22

QUESTIONS

Cheung Sheûng-Sz hui kóh kaan paák-fòh kung-sz kè shaú-shik pô  
tsô mi-yě à?

Kóh shuè yaũ ti mi-yě shaú-piu à?

Cheung Sheûng-Sz t'ai-tó yat-kòh paák kam tsuèn-shêk piu, kóh  
kòh piu hó mã?

K'ui chung m-chung-i kóh kòh piu à?

Kóh kòh piu keí toh ts'in\* à?

Kau-kíng ni kòh kà-ts'in\* ko m-ko à?

Cheung Sheûng-Sz i-wai kóh kòh piu chik m-chik-tak maaí à?

K'ui shan sheûng yaũ mǒ kòm toh in-foón à?

K'ui taaí m-kau ts'in\*, kóm tím à?

Kan-kui kóh kan kung-sz kè tsaáp-kwaàn, maaí yě peí chik-chí iù  
tím à?

Cheung Sheûng-Sz yaũ mǒ ching-ming shue à?



## INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 22

## VOCABULARY AND NOTES

maai-fòh-uēn salesman, salesclerk; nui maai-fòh-uēn  
'saleslady'

yaũ mat pong-ch'àn à? pong-ch'àn 'to patronize, patronage';  
yaũ mat pong-ch'àn à? 'Is there anything you wish to buy? May  
I help you?'

wân to transport, to ship, shipment; wân-tò 'to import  
into a locality, shipment reaches a locality'

paāk kam kam 'gold'; wōng kam 'yellow gold'; paāk kam  
'platinum, white gold'; ng kam 'metal'; t'it 'metal'; kam-shūk  
'made of metal'; ngān 'silver', a.f.: ngān t'ūng 'copper, brass';  
t'it 'iron'; sèk 'tin'; kōng 'steel', a.f.: kōng-t'it; uēn 'lead'

tsuēn-shêk diamond; a.f.: tsuēn-shêk\*; tsuēn-shêk paāk-  
kam piu 'diamond platinum watch, diamond white gold watch'

lîn\* chain, lace, necklace, watch band; lîn 'to train';  
kéng-lîn\* 'necklace'; piu-lîn\* 'watch chain, watch band', a.f.:  
piu-taai\*

pó-shêk pó 'precious, valuable, treasure, rare, bullion,  
jewel'; shêk 'rock, stone, precious stone', AN: kaũ; pó-shêk  
'precious stone'; hūng pó-shêk 'ruby'; laām pó-shêk 'sapphire',  
AN: nap, kaũ

lai kè particle expressing mild surprise; synonym: lai  
kè à, lai kà, lai à, lai; Cf: lai IU 4

saam-paāk kaũ-shâp kaũ-kòh kaũ hō poon paāk 'hundred';  
kòh 'AN for dollar', synonym: man, ngān-ts'in\*; hō 'dime, ten  
cents', synonym: hō-tsí; poon 'half'; saam-paāk kaũ-shâp kaũ-  
kòh kaũ hō poon '\$399.95'

yīng-chan very, really, truly, conscientious, earnest,  
painstaking, to take it seriously; a.f.: yīng\*-chan

taaī-fong dignified, graceful, liberal, generous-minded

t'ūng-shī in the mean time, meanwhile, same time, simul-  
taneously

mīng ch'óng mīng abbreviation of chuè-mīng, ch'ut-mēng\*  
'famous, well known'; ch'óng abbreviation of kung-ch'óng 'factory,  
works, shed'; mīng ch'óng 'famous factory, famous manufactory'

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 22

chai to manufacture, to produce, to make, to compound;  
a.f.: chai-tsô, tsô

kei-kîn\* mechanism, machine, machinery; a.f.: kei-hei

taam-pó to guarantee, guaranty, warranty, to go bail for,  
to insure; synonym: pó-ching; taam-pó yān 'guarantor'

lèng m̄-hai m̄-lèng lèng 'good in quality, well made,  
beautiful, handsome, good appearance'; lèng m̄-hai m̄-lèng 'not  
that it is not good'; parallel to structure: hó m̄-hai m̄-hó

ngaān-kwong foresight, foreseeing; yaū ngaān-kwong 'ability  
to foresee', synonym: yaū uēn-kīn

līn together with, in addition to, besides, including,  
plus, even, to connect, to join

shing percentage, %; sei-shing '4%', a.f.: paāk fān chi  
sei; to accomplish, to become, successful

shui taxes, revenue, duties; shóh-tak shui 'income tax';  
sei-shing shui '4% tax'

tsung-kung total, grand total, altogether

īn-foón foón 'a sum of money'; īn-foón 'cash, cash in  
hand'; synonym: īn-ts'īn\*, īn-ngān\*

chik-chí an order for money, a bank draft, money order,  
a check; a.f.: chi-p'iu, chak-chí, ngān-chik; AN: cheung

ching-ming shue ching-ming 'to certify, to prove, to verify,  
to identify, proof'; ching-ming shue 'identification, certificate'

shan-fān ching shan-fān 'status, position, rank'; shan-  
fān ching 'identification card'

ch'e p'aaī p'aaī 'license, plate, sign, tag, brand'; a.f.:  
chiù, p'aaī-chiù, ch'e p'aaī 'driver's license, operator's license';  
a.f.: cha ch'e p'aaī; ch'e p'aaī sometimes refers to car license;  
mōn p'aaī 'house number'; kaú p'aaī 'dog tag'; tsaú p'aaī 'liquor  
license'; chiu-p'aaī 'business sign'; ching p'aaī 'genuine brand'

shī-tān as one wishes, anything will do, up to you, no  
opinion; synonym: ts'ui-pīn\*, mō-shóh-wai

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 23

ORAL MATERIAL

Cheung Sheûng-Sz: Fóh-kei, ni kòh piu haî yûng lai sùng lai kè.

Nei hoh faú tseung k'ui paau-shēng sùng lai kè yeûng-tsz à?

Maaî-Fòh-Uēn: Tong-in hoh-i la. Ngõh sam-múk chung to i-wai nei maaî lai sùng lai kè. Kòh wai\* nuî-sz yat-ting ooî hó foon-hei là.

Sheûng-Sz: Ngõh hei-mông haî kóm. Ts'ing mân nei shue yau mǒ k'aat, ngõh hoh-i sé kei kòh tsz kè ne?

Maaî-Fòh-Uēn: Sin-shaang, nei iù hui mǎn-fōng pō sin-ching yau pòh. Mǎn-fōng pō haî i-laū\*. Nei hoh-i yau kòh t'au kè lau t'ai sheung lau-sheung. Yau hoh-i ts'oh shing-kòng-kei sheung lôk.

Sheûng-Sz: Koo-neung, ni shue haî mǎn-fōng pō. Nei shue yau sùng lai kè k'aat mǒ à? Ngõh-tei tâk-tang lai maaî k'aat kè.

Nuî Maaî-Fòh-Uēn: Taaî-pá, sin-shaang. Ts'ing nei ts'ui-pîn\* kaán la.

Sheûng-Sz: À-tsaí. Ngõh i-wai ni cheung chan yau i-i là.

À-Tsaí: Pei ngõh t'ai há. Ch'ui-chóh ti kung-hoh shaang-yat t'ung hing-hoh kit-fan kei-nim kè hó shuet-wá chi ngoi, yau wá: "Shâp nin seung tsui uē yat yat. Yat yat pat kin uē saam ts'au."

Sheûng-Sz: Hó mà? Ngõh ts'ung-loi mei kin-kwòh yat-cheung kóm ngaam shai kè k'aat, kóm shik-i ngõh-tei yung kè k'aat.

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 23

M/Sgt Cheung: This watch is intended as a gift. I wonder whether you can gift wrap this.

Salesman: Certainly, Sir. I'll be very happy to. I knew all along you bought this as a gift. I am sure this will make the lady very happy.

M/Sgt: I do hope so. Can you tell me whether you have some kind of a card on which I can write a few words?

Sales: Sir, I'm afraid you will have to go to the stationery department for that. That would be on the second floor. You may either take the stairs over there, or the elevator.

M/Sgt: Miss, this is the stationery department, I presume. Do you have some appropriate cards to go along with gifts? We came purposely for that.

Saleslady: We have plenty on hand, sir. Please help yourself with the selection.

M/Sgt: Son, I think this one is really meaningful.

Junior: Let me take a look, father. It has all the congratulatory words for birthday and anniversary, and besides, it says, "Ten years with you is like one day; and one day without you is like several years."

M/Sgt: Don't you think this is cute? I've never seen a card which can serve a purpose such as ours so very well.

張上士：你係用黎送禮嘅呀？  
賣貨員：你係用禮嘅呀？  
上士：我希可以寫生房樓落，  
賣貨員：我希可以寫生房樓落，  
上士：姑娘，呢處係文房地部特登黎隨隨便義日，不見  
女賣貨員：亞俾我睇婚紀相「十年」  
上士：好嗎？我從來未見過一張咁  
上士：好嗎？我從來未見過一張咁

## READING MATERIAL

鏢公最歡黎  
石間·好用  
鑽個嘅負係  
金俾禮貨鏢  
白講送賣個  
嘅佢黎個個  
貴，用個為  
名候係·以  
個時候鏢子都  
個嘅個樣中  
買錢個嘅目  
定俾，禮心  
決佢知送佢  
士·負成·  
上·太貨包做·  
張太賣佢樣嘅  
俾佢將敢禮  
俾司好喜送

等後房樓  
；然文由  
賣話，係以  
咁說要可  
有嘅話佢  
有義負·  
處意貨樓去  
個有賣二上  
員句·，係機  
貨幾處部降  
賣寫物房升  
問處禮文坐  
又咁件·者  
士張條賣或  
上條擠得，  
張以咁有去  
佢將部梯

大好重如從·  
有有，見佢佢  
處咗外不，咗  
個除之日義買  
倒處話一意就  
見咁說，有佢  
佢·好日好·  
，張嘅一話咁  
部一念如說嘅  
房倒紀聚句使  
文棟婚相兩啱  
嘅佢結年個咁  
樓·同·得張  
二咁日話覺一  
到嘅生說佢過  
去禮於句·見  
把送關兩秋末  
把多有三來

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 23

QUESTIONS

Cheung Sheûng-Sz k'uet-tîng maaï kôh kôh paâk kam tsuên-shêk piu.  
K'uï maaï lai tsô mi-yě kâ?

K'uï pei ts'in\* kê shî-haû, k'uï kiù maaï-fôh-uên tseung kôh piu  
pau-shêng tím-yeûng\* à?

Cheung Sheûng-Sz ch'ui-chóh maaï shaú piu chi ngoi, chûng seúng  
maaï ti mi-yě à?

K'uï seúng maaï ti k'aat lai tsô mi-yě à?

Iù hai pin pô chi yaü k'aat maaï à?

Mân-fông pô hai kôh kaan kung-sz kei lau\* à?

Sheûng-tò i-lau\* mân-fông pô chi haû, k'uï wân-tó sùng lai kê  
k'aat mà?

Kôh cheung k'aat ch'ui-chóh yaü hó toh kwaan-ue shaang-yât t'ûng  
kit-fan kei-nîm kê hó shuêt-wâ chi ngoi, chûng yaü leung kui  
shuêt-wâ. Kôh leung kui shuêt-wâ tím kóng à?

Kôh leung kui shuêt-wâ yaü i-i mà, ngaam k'uï-tei mà?

K'uï i-ts'in kin-kwòh yat-cheung kóm yeûng\* kê k'aat mei à?

## INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 23

## VOCABULARY AND NOTES

fóh-keí waiter, sales clerk, salesman, partner, fellow-worker

hóh faú? hóh abbreviation of hóh-í 'can, could, okay';  
faú (lit) 'not, to deny, if not, whether or not, on the contrary';  
hóh faú? (lit) 'can or cannot? may it be done?'; a.f.: hóh m-hóh-í 'can or cannot? would it be all right if...?'

tseung to take, to take hold of, to have...; when a verb has both a direct object and a complement, the tendency in Chinese is to break up the construction into two verbal phrases. The first part consists of tseung 'take hold of' and the direct object, while the second phrase contains the more specific verb plus the complement. We shall call the whole construction the "tseung" construction. For example, tseung ni ón faân shík-saai 'take this bowl of rice, eat it up, ---eat up this bowl of rice'

yeûng-tsú in the manner of..., looks as if...; sample, pattern, example, style, sort, model

sam-múk chung in one's mind, according to one's ideas; ngõh sam-múk-chung 'in my mind...'

nuí-sê a lady, female, Miss, more applicable to a middle-aged refined spinster; synonym: siú-ché, koo-neung

foon-heí happy, glad, to like, to be fond of

k'aat card, in this sense is a borrowing from English

mān-fōng pō mān-fōng 'stationery'; mān-fōng pō 'stationery department'; mān-fōng yung-pán 'stationery items'

sin-ching not until, until, till, then, only then; Cf: chì IU 5

î-laū\* laū\* 'an upper story, building'; î-lan\* 'second floor'; saam-laū\* 'third floor'; sei-laū\* '4th floor'; ng-laū\* '5th floor'; laū-sheung 'upstairs, upper floor, upper story'; laū-hâ 'downstairs, ground floor'; t'in-p'aang\* 'roof'; tei-lō 'basement'

yaū from, by way of, by means of

kóh t'au there, that side; a.f.: kóh shuè, kóh pîn; ni t'au 'here, this side', a.f.: ni pîn; sheung t'au 'upper side, above', a.f.: sheung pîn, sheung ko; hâ t'au 'lower side, below', a.f.: hâ pîn, taí-hâ.



INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 23

laū t'ai t'ai 'ladder'; laū t'ai 'staircase'

sheŭng to ascend, to go up, to go to, to go on, to send to

lôk to descend, to fall; sheŭng lôk 'to ascend and descend, to go up and down'

shing-kòng-kei shing 'to ascend', synonym: sheŭng; kòng 'to descend', synonym: lôk; shing-kòng-kei 'elevator, lift'; a.f.: tîn-t'ai, lip; AN: ka

koo-neŭng a lady, Miss, nun (Catholic). More colloquial than siú-ché and more applicable to a youthful spinster.

tâk-tang purposely, deliberately, knowingly, wilfully; a.f.: chuen-tang, koè-î, yaŭ-sam, ts'uēn-sam, lâp-sam

taaî-pá a great deal of, many much, plenty, abundant; synonym: hō toh

kaán to select, to choose, to screen

ì-î meaning, significance; yaŭ ì-î 'meaningful, purposeful, significant, noteworthy'; mō ì-î 'meaningless, insignificant, senseless'

kung-hôh to congratulate; a.f.: kung-heí; kung-hôh san-hei (lit) 'Happy New Year'

hìng-hôh to celebrate, to congratulate

shâp-nîn seung tsuí uē yat yat tsuí 'to gather, to assemble'; uē (lit) 'as if, like, such as'; seung tsuí 'to stay together, to gather, gathering'; shâp nîn seung tsuí uē yat yat 'ten years with you is like one day'

yat yat pat kìn uē saam ts'au ts'au 'Autumn'; yat yat pat kìn uē saam ts'au 'one day without you is like several (three) years'

ts'ūng-loí heretofore, at any time, from the beginning; ts'ūng-loí meí 'never before, there has never been'; ts'ūng-loí meí kìn-kwòh 'never seen before'

shik-í suitable, appropriate, adequate, proper

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 24

ORAL MATERIAL

Cheung T'aai-T'aai\*: A-Chim, moon chung heung a. Nei hoi moon, ho ma?

Cheung Sheung-Sz: Oh. A! Paak Sheung-Wai! Ts'ing yap-lai la. Ngoh ni shue naan wan ma?

Paak Sheung-Wai: Uen-ts'uën m-naan, Cheung Sheung-Sz. Tui m-chue poh, ngoh lai ch'i-choh.

Sheung-Sz: M-kan-iu, m-kan-iu. Paak Sheung-Sz, ni wai\* hai ngoh ke noi-tsú, Ma-Lei. Ni koh hai ngoh-tei ke siu-i. Ni koh hai ngoh-tei ke siu-nui\*. Ni wai\* hai Paak Sheung-Wai.

Cheung T'aai-T'aai\*: Paak Sheung-Wai, nei lai chan-hai sheung min\* la.

Sheung-Wai: Cheung T'aai-T'aai\*, ngoh ho foon-hei yau kei-ooi shik-to nei.

Sheung-Sz: Tang ngoh kaai-shiu ti yan-haak pei nei seung-shik la. Lei Sheung-Kaaù, Lei T'aai-T'aai\*. Ko Chung-Kaaù, Ko T'aai-T'aai\*. Wong Siu-Tsé.....Paak Sheung-Wai.

Sheung-Wai: Lei Sheung-Kaaù, Lei T'aai-T'aai\*. Ko Chung-Kaaù, Ko T'aai-T'aai\*. Wong Siu-Tsé.

Sheung-Sz: Ts'ui-pin\* ts'oh. M-ho haak-hei. Tong hai tsz-kei uk-k'ei tsaü ho la. Shik in ma? Nei foon-hei yam mi-ye ne? Ngoh-tei ch'a-m-toh mi-ye to yau...ma-ting-nai, maan-hak-tun, So-Kaak-Laan wai-sz-kei\*, Mei-Kwok wai-sz-kei\*, chin tsaü, wok-ka tsaü, pe tsaü.....

Sheung-Wai: M-haak-hei, m-haak-hei. So-kaak-Laan wai-sz-kei\*

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 24

k'au shoh-tá shuí, hó mà? Cheung T'aaì-T'aaì\*, neĩ kwai foó  
chan-hai hó tei-fong là. Ngoi-pîn waân-kíng yaú hó, fung-  
kíng yaú meĩ-lai. Lui-pîn pò-chi-tak kòm wā -lai, kòm kóng-  
kau. Chan naân-tak là.

Cheung T'aaì-T'aaì\*: Neĩ kwòh tséung che, Paâk Sheûng-Wai. Pat-  
kwòh hai yat-kaan maaū-shè lai chi mà.

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 24

Mrs. Cheung: Jim, the door bell. Will you see who is there?

M/Sgt Cheung: I'll get it, dear. Hello! Capt White! Please come in. Did you have any trouble in finding the place?

Capt White: No trouble at all, Jim. I am sorry I am late.

M/Sgt: Not at all. Capt White, I would like you to meet my wife, Mary; our son, and our daughter. This is Capt White.

Mrs. Cheung: How do you do, Capt White? We're so happy that you honor us with your presence.

W: How do you do, Mrs. Cheung? I am happy to meet you.

M/Sgt: Allow me to introduce the other guests to you. Col. and Mrs. Leï, Lt Col and Mrs. Ko, Miss Wōng... Capt White.

W: How do you do, Colonel? How do you do, Mrs. Leï? Pleased to meet you, Col Ko, Mrs. Ko. Miss Wōng.

M/Sgt: Please make yourself at home. Do you smoke? Cigarettes? What would you like to drink? We have practically everything ...Martini, Manhattan, Scotch, Bourbon, Gin, Vodka, beer...

W: Thank you, Jim. Scotch and soda would be fine. Mrs Cheung, you have a beautiful home. On the outside you have such a wonderful environment and breath-taking scenery. Whereas, inside, you have such splendid decor of elegance and good taste. This is really something.

Mrs. Cheung: Thank you, Capt White. It's very kind of you. This is merely a shed, as a Chinese should humbly say.

張太太：亞占，門鐘響呀。你開門好嗎？  
 張上尉：啊，呀！難搵嗎？上尉！請入黎啦。我  
 白上尉：呢處難搵，張上尉。對唔住播，  
 上尉：唔緊要。白上尉，呢位係  
 張太太：唔緊要。我嘅內子，瑪利，呢個係  
 張上尉：張太太，我介紹李小姐……白上尉，你黎真係賞識倒你。  
 上尉：李隨便坐好，我地曼士忌，好食差唔頓，蘇格蘭威士忌，啤  
 上尉：唔客氣，唔客氣。蘇格蘭威士忌，

張太太：「你貴府真係好地方啦，裏  
外便佈得環境又好華麗，風景咁  
好又講究，真係好地方。」

張太太：「你過嚟，白上尉，不過係一間  
茅舍，獎黎之嗎。」



INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 24

QUESTIONS

Kam-yât hái sing-k'ei lûk. Cheung Sheûng-Sz, Cheung T'aaî-T'aaî\*  
hái pin-shuè ts'éng haák à?

K'uî-teî ts'éng kè toh-shò hái mi-yě yān à?

K'uî-teî toh-shò hái lǒ p'aāng-yaũ, yik-waāk hái san p'aāng-yaũ  
à?

Kóh ti yān-haák hái pin keí kòh à?

Paāk Sheûng-Wai hái m-hai lai ch'i-chóh à?

K'uî lai-chóh chi hau, pin-kòh kaaî-shiû k'uî t'ūng kóh ti yān-  
haák seung-shik à?

Cheung Sheûng-Sz shuè yaũ ti mi-yě tsaú à?

Paāk Sheûng-Wai yám ti mi-yě tsaú à?

Cheung Sheûng-Sz kè uk kè luí-pin pò-chi-tak tím à?

Uk ngoi-pin kè waān-king tím à? Fung-king tím à?



## INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 24

## VOCABULARY AND NOTES

moõn chung moõn 'door, gateway, opening, profession, section, school', AN: tõ, chèk; chung 'bell, clock', AN: kòh; moõn chung 'door bell'

hoi moõn hoi 'to open'; hoi moõn 'to open door, to open business, open', VO construction

uẽn ts'uẽn completely, entirely, all, perfect, complete, entire

noì-tsʒ my wife (humble); ngõh nuĩ-yān\* (humble) 'my wife'; noì-yān\* (humble) 'my wife'; lõ-p'õh (colloq.) 'wife'; t'aai-t'aai\* (honorific) 'wife'; tsai (lit) 'wife'; faat ts'ai (lit) 'lawful wedded wife'; foo-yān\* (honorific) 'wife'; tsuen foo-yān\* (honorific) 'your wife'

siú i my son (humble); tsai (colloq) 'son'; sai-ló-koh (colloq) 'son, child'; sai-man-tsai (colloq) 'son, child'; i (lit, humble) 'my son'; i-tsʒ (lit, formal) 'son'; kung-tsʒ (honorific) 'son'; ling kung-tsʒ (honorific) 'your son'; ling lōng\* (honorific)

siú nuĩ my daughter (humble); nuĩ\* (colloq) 'daughter'; nuĩ (lit, formal) 'daughter'; ts'in-kam (honorific) 'daughter'; ling ts'in-kam (honorific) 'your daughter'; i nuĩ (lit, formal) 'children'; tsʒ nuĩ (lit, formal) 'children'; tsai nuĩ\* (colloq) 'children'

sheung mĩn\* to favor with one's presence, to give face to; synonym: pei mĩn\*; antonym: m-peĩ mĩn\*, m-sheung mĩn\*

seung-shik to be acquainted with, ; a.f.: shik, yĩng-shik

kaai-shiũ to introduce, to recommend; kaai-shiũ...pei nei 'to introduce...to you'; kaai-shiũ...t'ũng nei yĩng-shik 'to introduce...to you'; ngõh kaai-shiũ nei maai ni kã ch'e 'I recommend that you buy this car'

tõng to regard as, to treat as, to take for granted, to pawn; ngõh tõng k'ui hai nei 'I thought he was you'; tõng yẽ 'to pawn an article'; tõng-p'ò\* 'pawn shop'; tong 'then, at that time'; tong shĩ 'at that time, then'

shĩk in in 'smoke'; in-tsai 'cigarettes'; in-ĩp\* 'tobacco'; Luĩ-Sũng in 'cigar'; shĩk in 'to smoke', VO construction

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 24

mǎ-ting-naī 'Martini'

maân-hak-tûn 'Manhattan'

So-Kaāk-Laān wai-sz̄-keī\* So-Kaāk-Laān 'Scotland'; So-Kaāk-Laān yān 'Scotsman'; So-Kaāk-Laān Ts'eūng 'Scotland Yard'; wai-sz̄-keī\* 'whisky'; So-Kaāk-Laān wai-sz̄-keī\* 'Scotch whiskey'

chin tsaú gin; a.f.: chin

wôk-ka tsaú 'vodka'; a.f.: fûk-tâk-ka tsaú

pe-tsaú beer; a.f.: pe

k'au to mix, to mix up; k'au shuí 'to mix with water, to dilute with water'

shoh-tá soda, sodium bicarbonate, caustic soda; shoh-tá shuí 'soda water'

kwai foó your residence (honorific); a.f.: foó-sheūng (honorific), nei uk-k'eī (colloq) 'your home', nei kē uk (colloq) 'your house'

teī-fong a place, locality, location, local

ngoī-pîn outside, without; a.f.: ch'ut-pîn, ngoī-ch'ut, ngoī-t'aū, ngoī (lit)

fung-king scenery, landscape; synonym: king-shik

meī-laī beautiful, pretty, attractive, elegant; synonym: meī (lit), meī-hó (lit), meī-koon (lit), lèng (colloq) 'beautiful, pretty, attractive, elegant, good in quality'

luī-pîn luī 'inside'; luī-pîn 'inside, within'; a.f.: luī-t'aū, noi-pîn, noi (lit), luī (lit)

pò-chì to decorate, to arrange, to display, to put in order, to tidy up, to plan, to plot; synonym: pai (colloq) 'to arrange, to put in order, to display'

wā-laī splendid, ornamental, elegant, luxurious

kóng-kaù particular about, professionally made, critical

maaū-shè shè 'place of abode, lodge'; maaū 'straw, weeds';

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 24

maaū shê (humble, lit) 'my shed'; a.f.: shê-hâ (humble, lit) 'my humble abode', ngōh kē uk-k'eí (colloq) 'my house', laân uk (humble, colloq) 'my broken house', uk-tsaí (humble, colloq) 'my little hut', hōn shê (lit, humble) 'my unheated shed'

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 25

ORAL MATERIAL

Cheung Sheung-Sz: Paak Sheung-Wai, nei hang lai chan-hai pei min\* la. Nei ling ngoh-tei fei-sheung chi foon-hei.

Paak Sheung-Wai: Mat-shuet-wa, mat-shuet-wa. Nei-tei ts'eng ngoh chi hai pei min\* ngoh. A-Chim, ts'ing man koh wai\* Wong Siu-Tse hai pin-wai\* a?

Cheung Sheung-Sz: Wong Siu-Tse a? Wong Siu-Tse hai ngoh noi-ts'z ke lo nin p'aang-yaü. Nei chi-to la, ngoh so-loi ho shiu ta-lei ngoh nu-yän\* ke sz. Yik-to ho shiu t'ung k'ui ke p'aang-yaü haang-maai. Shoh-i kwaan-ue k'ui ke shan-shai, tai-wän\*, ngoh to m-hai kei ts'ing-ch'oh, m-hai kei chi-to poh. Tang ngoh yaü i mo i kom taai nei haang-maai k'ui shue. Nei t'ung k'ui k'ing ha kai\*, ho ma? Wong Siu-Tse, ngoh kaai-shiu-kwòh Paak Sheung-Wai pei nei seung-shik mei a?

Wong Siu-Tse: Ching-wa t'au-sin i-king kaai-shiu-kwòh la, Paak Sheung-Wai.

Paak Sheung-Wai: Wong Siu-Tse, nei chan-hai min-shin la, ho-ts'z ngoh i-ts'in kin-kwòh nei kom yeung\*. Ngoh seung-choh yat-p'aaí, seung-loi seung-hui, mo paan-faat seung-tak-ch'ut.

Wong Siu-Tse: Chan haaü-miü la. Ngoh yik hai kom seung. Nei haang-yap-lai ke shi-hau, ngoh ke sam tsaü wa: Ngoh hai pin shue kin-kwòh nei ne? Kom shuk min-hau.

Cheung Sheung-Sz: Tui-m-chue yat-chan. Tang ngoh t'ung nei-tei leung-wai\* tsoi cham yat-pooi tsaü.

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 25

M/Sgt Cheung: Capt. White, we're so happy that you can come.

This is indeed an honor.

Capt White: Not at all. It is an honor that I have been invited. Say, Jim, who is this Miss Wōng?

M/Sgt: Miss Wōng? Miss Wōng is one of my wife's old acquaintances. As you know, I seldom pay any attention to my wife's affairs, and hardly associate with her friends. Therefore, as far as Miss Wōng's background is concerned, I don't have very much information. Why don't we inconspicuously make our way over there, and you get acquainted with her?

Miss Wōng, have you met Capt. White?

Miss Wōng: We have just met. Hello, Capt. White.

Capt White: Hello. Miss Wōng, you do look familiar to me. Where have I seen you before? I have been thinking it over and over. I just can't figure that out.

Miss Wōng: What a coincidence. I was thinking the very same thing. The moment you walked in, I have kept on asking myself: Where have I seen you before?

M/Sgt: Please excuse me for a moment. Let me fix you two another drink.

張上士：白上尉，你常也亞？肯之說占，黎歡話，真喜，係俾面<sup>+</sup>啦。你係，你地請我至係姐

白上尉：白令也俾面邊呀？你人埋唔有佢姐呀？頭姐見想妙時候你

張：黃小姐，我友我友我等你黃識正黃以想真黎處住杯

黃小姐：白上尉，白好一。你行入邊

黃小姐：白上尉，白好一。你行入邊

張：對唔

白上尉：白令也俾面邊呀？你人埋唔有佢姐呀？頭姐見想妙時候你

張：黃小姐，我友我友我等你黃識正黃以想真黎處住杯

黃小姐：白上尉，白好一。你行入邊

黃小姐：白上尉，白好一。你行入邊

張：對唔

## READING MATERIAL

傾士賞；煙張地好，食是他得酒尤覺飲，但客喜。人歡飯。的都好食同都處士客佢上人去張同客家人人而主多。獨有面。

白講趣者，小去地興或蘊事黃埋佢有，底啲於行，好友世呢關士耐題老身理以，張有幾個年嘅打所，陣個多姐少；楚一傾對太黃來行幾，呢嘅小好埋清。啱尉尉張關佢朋唔飲上上係啲，嘅都酒白白姐知道話太佢飲同。小姐知道話太佢地，姐黃會上佢世，尉黃知道上係少嘅上到佢張但好姐

黃似啱想上，去好想敢白，埋，係得佢行善去都覺過尉面想亦都見上好來姐亦處白姐想小佢邊帶小佢黃，係敢黃。時候前意得樣出時以無覺敢得嘅知意尉過想尉唔有上見法上，士白處辦白熟，張處係，見口小姐前排佢面小以一當尉

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 25

QUESTIONS

Ī-ka Cheung Sheûng-Sz̄ t'ûng ti yān-haak yám tsaú, k'ing kai\*.  
K'uĩ kòk-tak hó foon-heí. Tím-kaaí à?

Cheung Sheûng-Sz̄ t'ûng Paâk Sheûng-Wai k'ing-chóh yat chān, hau-  
loí k'uĩ-teí kóng-tò pin-kòh à?

Paâk Sheûng-Wai tui-ue Wōng Siú-Tsé yaũ mǒ hìng-ts'ui à?

Wōng Siú-Tsé t'ûng Cheung T'aai-T'aai\* seung-shik-chóh keí noi  
à?

Cheung T'aai-T'aai\* t'ûng Wōng Siú-Tsé hai toh nīn lǒ yaũ. Kóm,  
Cheung Sheûng-Sz̄ chi m̄-chi-tò ti kwaan-ue Wōng Siú-Tsé kè shan-  
shai à?

Kei-in Cheung T'aai-T'aai\* t'ûng Wōng Siú-Tsé hai toh nīn lǒ yaũ,  
tím-kaaí Cheung Sheûng-Sz̄ tui Wōng Siú-Tsé kè shan-shai chūng m̄-  
ts'ing-ch'óh à?

Cheung Sheûng-Sz̄ tím-yeûng\* taai Paâk Sheûng-Wai haang-maai hui  
Wōng Siú-Tsé shuè à?

Paâk Sheûng-Wai kīn-tó Wōng Siú-Tsé kè shī-hau, k'uĩ kòk-tak tím-  
yeûng\* à?

Wōng Siú-Tsé kīn-tó Paâk Sheûng-Wai kè shī-hau, k'uĩ kòk-tak tím  
à?



INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 26

ORAL MATERIAL

Paâk Sheûng-Wai: Ooĩ m̄-ooĩ hai Naú-Yeùk, Lün-Tun, kìn-kwòh neĩ?  
Yik-waâk hai Tung-King, T'oi-Pak, Heung-Kóng...to wâ-m̄-tîng.

Wōng Siú-Tsé: Ngõh chi-tò yat-tîng m̄-ooĩ hai Môk-Sz-Foh. Ngõh  
seung-sùn hai Heung-Kóng to m̄-tîng.

Paâk: Neĩ hai Heung-Kóng tsô mi-yě ne?

Wōng: Ngõh ĩ-ts'in hai Heung-Kóng Mei-Kwòk Tsúng Lĩng-Sz-Koón  
Lûk-Kwan Lín-Lòk-Koon shuè tsô nuĩ pei-shue.

Paâk: Ā! Hai là! Ngõh kei-tak yaũ yat-ts'è yaũ T'oi-Pak hui  
Heung-Kóng taam-yâm lām-shī chik-mô kè shī-haũ, ngõh ts'āng-  
king tò-kwòh Lín-Lòk-Koon paân-kung-t'eng paai-fóng Hõh  
Sheûng-Kaaù. Neĩ tsaũ hai Hõh Sheûng-Kaaù kè nuĩ pei-shue.  
M̄-kwaaĩ-tak la.

Wōng: Hai là. Ngõh i-ka kei-tak là. Kóh yât tá taaĩ fung, lôk  
taaĩ uẽ, haāng lui, shīm tîn. T'in-hei fei-sheung chi m̄-hó.  
Neĩ yaũ mǒ uẽ-lau, taaĩ-lau. Neĩ tò ngõh-tei kè sé-tsê-laũ  
kè shī-haũ, hó-ts'è yat-chèk lôk-t'ong-kai kóm-yeung\*. Yaũ  
hóh-lín, yaũ hõh siù.

Paâk: Hai là. Tong-shī ngõh ying\*-chan lōng-pooi, ying\*-chan  
shat-laĩ. Haũ-loĩ hó-ts'oi tak-tó Hõh Sheûng-Kaaù tsè shaam  
ngõh oôn, ngõh cheùk. M̄-hai, tsui-tai haân-tô to ooĩ laāng  
sheung fung kà là.

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 26

Capt White: Do you think we could have met in New York or London? Or perhaps in Tokyo, Taipei, Hong Kong...may be?

Miss Wōng: I know for sure it couldn't be in Moscow. Perhaps in Hong Kong?

White: What were you doing in Hong Kong?

Wōng: I was the Secretary to the Army Liaison Officer, American Consulate General, Hong Kong.

White: That was it! I remember at one time when I was on TDY from Taipei to Hong Kong, I went to the Army Liaison Office to see Col. Hōh. You were Col. Hōh's secretary. No wonder.

Wōng: That's right. I remember now. I remember we had terrible weather on that day. There was a storm, the rain was pouring, lightning and thundering. You didn't have a raincoat or over coat. When you came in to the office, you were soaking wet. I felt sorry for you. You looked really funny.

White: That's it. I was awfully embarrassed at that time. I just didn't know what to do. It was a good thing that Col Hōh loaned me some dry clothes. Otherwise, I would have at least caught a cold.





INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 26

QUESTIONS

I-ka Wōng Siú-Tsé t'ūng Paâk Sheûng-Wai k'ing ti mi-yě à?

Ch'oh-shī Paâk Sheûng-Wai ĭ-wai k'uĩ-tei ĭ-ts'in hai pin shuè seung-shik kà?

Wōng Siú-Tsé seung-sùn k'uĩ-tei ĭ-ts'in hai pin shuè kìn kwòh kà?

Wōng Siú-Tsé ĭ-ts'in hai Heung-Kóng pin shuè kung-tsòk à?

Tong-shī k'uĩ taam-yâm mi-yě kung-tsòk à?

Tong-shī Paâk Sheûng-Wai yaū pin shuè pei p'aaì hui Heung-Kóng à?

K'uĩ pei p'aaì hui Heung-Kóng tsô mi-yě à?

K'uĩ hai Heung-Kóng kè shī-haū paaì-fóng pin-kòh Meĩ-Kwòk kwan-koon à?

K'uĩ hai pin shuè kìn-tó Wōng Siú-Tsé à?

Tong yât t'in-hei tím à?

Tong-shī Paâk Sheûng-Wai mǒ uě-lau, k'uĩ lōng-pooi mà?

## INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 26

## VOCABULARY AND NOTES

Lūn-Tun London

Tung-King Tokyo

T'oi-Pak Taipei

Heung-Kóng Hong Kong

wâ-m-tîng IE, can't say for sure, there is no telling, may be...

Môk-Sz-Foh Moscow

tsúng lǐng-sz-koón tsung 'total, general'; lǐng-sz 'consul'; tsúng-lǐng-sz 'consul general'; koón 'a public office, a private dwelling, a hall, a tavern, a restaurant, a tea-house'; lǐng-sz-koón 'consulate'; tsúng lǐng-sz-koón 'consulate general'

līn-lòk-koon (luēn-lòk-koon) līn-lòk 'liaison, to keep in contact, to get in touch, to affiliate'; koon 'official, officer'; līn-lòk-koon 'liaison officer'; Lūk-Kwan līn-lòk-koon 'Army liaison officer'; foò līn-lòk-koon 'assistant liaison officer'

pei-shue secretary; shue-kei 'clerk'; tá-ts̄-uēn 'typist'; ts'uk-sé-shang 'stenographer'

lām-shī temporary, provisional, for the time being

chik-mô official business, official duty, function, mission, assignment; lām-shī chik-mô 'temporary duty, TDY'

ts'āng-king already, before; synonym: ts'āng (lit)

paân-kung-t'eng paân kung 'to transact official business, to work in an office', VO construction, a.f.: paân sz; t'eng 'hall, guest room'; paân-kung-t'eng 'office'; a.f.: paân-sz-chuè, paân-kung-shat, paân-kung-ch'ue, sé-ts̄-laū; AN: kaan, kòh

paai-fóng to pay respects to, to pay a visit, to visit, courtesy call, to call on; paai-hau, wán (colloq), kin (colloq), fóng (lit)

tá fung to have a storm, typhoon, hurricane, VO construction; tá taaí fung 'heavy storm'

lòk uē to rain, raining, VO construction; lòk taaí uē 'heavy rain, drenching rain, rain is pouring'

haang lui to thunder, thundering, thunderbolt, VO construction

shim tân lightning, flash of lightning, VO construction

t'in-hei weather

uē-lau raincoat; a.f.: uē-i, AN:kîn; uē-haai 'rainshoes';  
uē-mô\* 'rain hat'

taaī-lau overcoat, topcoat; a.f.: lau, taaī-i; AN:kîn

sé-tsž-laū office; Cf: paân-kung-t'eng; AN: kòh, kaan;  
sé-tsž-t'oi\* 'desk'

lòk-t'ong-kai (slang) soaking wet

hòh-lîn lîn 'to pity, to have compassion on'; hòh-lîn  
'pitiabile, pitiful'

hòh siù siù 'to laugh, to smile'; hòh siù 'laughable,  
funny'

lōng-pooi in great distress, very much troubled, in great  
embarrassment

shat-lai no manner; I beg your pardon

tsè to lend to, to borrow from; ngõh tsè ts'in\* pei k'ui  
'I lend money to him'; ngõh t'üng k'ui tsè ts'in\* 'I borrow  
money from him'

cheük to clothe, to wear (clothes, trousers, shoes, socks);  
cheük shaam 'to put on clothes'; cheük-foò 'to put on trousers';  
cheük haai 'to wear shoes'; cheük mat 'to wear socks'; cheük has  
a limited use, differs from taaī and laâm, such as taaī mô\* 'to  
put on a hat'; taaī piu 'to put on a watch'; laâm pei-taai\* 'to  
put on a belt'

sheung fung to have a cold; laäng sheung-fung 'to catch  
a cold'; laäng 'cold'

tsui tai haân-tô tai 'low, down'; tsui tai 'lowest'; haân-  
tô 'limit, limitation, restriction'; tsui tai haân-tô 'at least'

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 27

ORAL MATERIAL

Paâk Sheûng-Wai: Tŝ-t̂s'ũng kóh ts'è kìn-kwòh neĩ yat mìn chi haũ, ĩ-haũ tsaũ mǝ kei-ooĩ kìn-kwòh neĩ. Chik chi-tò ĩ-ka ĩ-king ch'a-m-toh saam sei nĩn kòm noi. Neĩ tím à?

Wōng Siú-Tsé: T'òk-laaĩ, t'òk-laaĩ. Shĩ-haũ kwòh-tak kòm faaĩ. Koó-m-tò ĩ-king saam sei nĩn kòm noi.

Paâk: Neĩ keĩ nĩn loi tsô mi-yě à?

Wōng: Kóng heĩ lai tsaũ ch'eũng là. Ngõh to m-chi haĩ pin shuè heĩ-shaũ hó. Tsúng ĩ ĩn chi, ngõh to haĩ haĩ ŝ-ĩp sheung chui-k'aũ shĩng-tsaũ.

Paâk: Kóm, neĩ haĩ yat-kòh chik-ĩp nuĩ-sing. Pat hóh toh tak kà pòh. Neĩ poón-loi haĩ pin-shuè yān-shĩ\* à?

Wōng: Ngõh kè foô-ts'an haĩ Chung-Kwòk Kwóng-Tung yān. Ngõh kè mǝ-ts'an haĩ ĩ-Taaĩ-Leĩ t'ũng Sai-Paan-Ngā yān. Neĩ hóh-ĩ wā ngõh haĩ yat-kòh tsaáp-chúng nuĩ\*. K'eĩ-shat ngõh haĩ Heung-Kóng ch'ut shai, shóh-ĩ ch'ut shai tsaũ haĩ Ying tsík. Taan-haĩ ngõh ĩ-king yāp tsík Meĩ-Kwòk. ĩn-tsoĩ haĩ Meĩ-Kwòk yān.

Paâk: Neĩ kè foô mǝ, hing tai, tŝ mooĩ\* haĩ shuè mà?

Wōng: Ngõh kè foô-ts'an ĩ-king huĩ shai. Mǝ-ts'an ĩ-ĩn tsoĩ shaang. Yat-kòh taaĩ-ló, sai-ló haĩ Meĩ-Kwòk. Mǝ-ts'an t'ũng taaĩ-tŝ, sai-mooĩ\* haĩ Heung-Kóng.



INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 27

Capt White: Since I met you that time, I didn't have a chance to see you. It must have been three or four years now.

How have you been?

Miss Wōng: Very well, thank you. Time surely flies. It is hard to realize it has been three or four years.

White: What have you been doing during these few years?

Wōng: Well, it is a long story. I don't know where to begin.

In short, I may say I have been plugging along in my career.

White: You have been a professional woman. This is indeed an accomplishment. Where were you from, Miss Wōng?

Wōng: My father is from Canton, China. My mother is Italian-Spanish. You may say I am an Eurasian. In fact, I was born in Hong Kong and therefore I was a British subject by birth. But I have since become an American citizen, and I am an American.

White: Are your folks here? Your parents, brothers, and sisters, I mean.

Wōng: My father has passed away. My mother is still living. My two brothers are here in the States. But my mother is staying with my two sisters in Hong Kong.



## READING MATERIAL

同經再  
 佢已地  
 ，又佢  
 後，佢  
 之覺日  
 港不一  
 香知有  
 開不喜  
 離快歡  
 次面真之  
 上過得極  
 從見過都  
 自未候人  
 尉來時兩  
 上從年面  
 白姐年面  
 黃三四見  
 黃三次

嘅說，職  
 講何中個  
 要從之一  
 佢知年做  
 不幾想就  
 事，呢佢成  
 嘅長在少  
 往話係力多  
 以來，努力  
 翻說嘅上得  
 講，得業上  
 姐謂記事業  
 小所所係事  
 黃真佢唔在  
 家據日，  
 而多根一性  
 好有女  
 野起佢業

廣·黎嘅姊母  
 國人來佢兩  
 中種後有國  
 係雜人佢美  
 親嘅籍國係  
 父牙英美生  
 嘅班係係在  
 佢西，在然佬  
 同世現依細香  
 世利出，親同  
 身大港籍母哥  
 嘅意香美·大  
 佢係係咗世·  
 到親人入去弟  
 講母本，經兄  
 再·姐國已三  
 人小美親，大  
 東黃到父妹親

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 27

QUESTIONS

Paâk Sheûng-Wai tsz̄-t's'ûng sheûng ts'z̄ lei-hoi Heung-Kóng chi haû, k'uĩ t'ûng Wōng Siú-Tsé yaũ mǒ kìn-kwòh mìn à?

Keí nìn chi haû, k'uĩ-teĩ tsoi ts'z̄ kìn mìn à?

K'uĩ-teĩ kìn mìn kè shī-haû, foon m̄-foon-heĩ à?

Uē-kwòh neĩ mǒ kìn neĩ kè t'aaĩ-t'aaĩ\* hó noi, neĩ tsoi ts'z̄ kìn-tò k'uĩ kè shī-haû, neĩ kòk-tak tím à?

Wōng Siú-Tsé haĩ ĩ-wǒng saam sei nìn chi chung, tsô ti mi-yě à?

K'uĩ seúng tsô yat-kòh tím-yeûng\* kè nũ sîng à?

Neĩ seúng m̄-seúng tsô yat kòh chik-íp kwan-yān à?

K'uĩ kè foô-ts'an haĩ pin shuè yān à?

K'uĩ kè mǒ-ts'an haĩ pin shuè yān à?

Wōng Siú-Tsé poón-yān haĩ pin shuè ch'ut shai à?

K'uĩ ĩ-ka haĩ pin kwòk yān à?

K'uĩ yaũ keĩ hing tai, keĩ tsz̄ mooĩ\* à?

## INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 27

## VOCABULARY AND NOTES

kìn mìn to meet, VO construction; kìn-kwòh yat mìn 'met once'; kìn-kwòh neī yat mìn 'met you once'; kìn-kwòh neī yat mìn chi haū 'since I met you'

ī-haū henceforth, afterwards, later

chik chi-tò... until...; up to ...; chik chi-tò ī-ka 'until now, up to now', a.f.: chi-tò ī-ka, chi kam (lit)

koó m̄-tò koó 'to guess, to estimate', synonym: ch'ak-tòk; koó m̄-tò 'do not realize'; koó m̄-tò 'guessed wrong'

keī nīn loī during last few years; keī kòh uēt loī 'for the last few months'; keī yat loī 'for the last few days'; kān-loī 'recently'

kóng heī lai come to talk about it; ch'eūng 'long, lengthy'; kóng heī lai tsaū ch'eūng là 'it is a long story to tell, it is a long story, it takes a long time to finish the story'; a.f.: shuēt loī wā ch'eūng (lit)

tsúng ī in chi tsúng 'total'; in (lit) 'to speak, to say'; chi (lit) 'personal pronoun, he, she, it, this, that, these', often used as a 'possessive' as the colloq kè; tsúng ī in chi 'in short, to sum up, to put it briefly, after all'; a.f.: tsúng-chi (colloq), tsúng in chi (lit, colloq)

hai...sheūng in regard to, in; a.f.: tsoī...sheūng (lit), ...sheūng, hai... fong-mìn, tsoī... fong-mìn, ...fong-mìn, hai... sheūng-mìn, tsoī...sheūng-mìn; hai s̄-īp sheūng 'in career, in the matter of career', a.f.: tsoī s̄-īp sheūng (lit)

chui-k'aū chui 'to chase after, to pursue, to court'; k'aū 'to beg, to request, to ask for'; chui-k'aū 'to pursue (after an objective), to strive, to court (a woman or a man)'

shīng-tsaū success, accomplishment, attainment of goal; synonym: shīng-kung IU8

nuī s̄ing s̄ing 'sex, nature, disposition'; nuī s̄ing 'female, woman'; naām s̄ing 'male, man'; t'ūng s̄ing 'same sex'; chik-īp nuī s̄ing 'professional woman, career woman'

pat hōh toh tak hōh (lit) 'abbreviation of hōh-ī IU 5'; pat 'not, a negative'; toh IU 8; pat hōh toh tak (lit) 'hard to get, rare to find, valuable'; a.f.: naān tak (colloq), naān wān (colloq), shuí yaū (colloq), naān nāng hōh kwai (lit)

poón-loí originally, the truth is, as a matter of fact, in fact, properly; synonym: uēn-poón, uēn-loí, poón (lit), uēn (lit)

yān-shî\* a clan; pin shuè yān-shî\*? 'of what clan? Where are you from?' when asking this question, be aware that the answer may not be the birth place. If the birth place is in question ask neí hái pin shuè ch'ut shai?

foō-ts'an pā-pa, à-pa, pa, lǒ-taū (colloq); lǒ-tsǔ (less common); foō (lit); ka foō (humble); ka im (lit, humble) 'my father'; ling tsuen (honorific, lit) 'your father'; ling tsuen yung (honorific, lit) 'your father'

mō-ts'an mother; a.f.: mā-ma, à-ma, ma, lǒ-mō\* (colloq), mō (lit), ka mō (humble) 'my mother', ka ch'ī (lit, humble) 'my mother'; ling t'ōng (honorific, lit) 'your mother'; ling shaū t'ōng (honorific, lit) 'your mother'

Ì-Taaî-Leî Italy; a.f.: Ì Kwòk, Ì (abbreviation); Ì-Taaî-Leî yān 'Italian people'

Sai-Paan-Ngā Spain; a.f.: Sai (abbreviation); Sai-Paan-Ngā yān 'Spanish people'

tsaâp-chúng nuǐ\* tsaâp 'mixed, blended'; chúng 'sort, kind, species', Cf: pin chùng IU 3; tsaâp-chúng 'mixed blood, mixed seed, half-caste'; tsaâp-chúng nuǐ\* 'mixed blood woman'; tsaâp-chúng tsaí 'mixed blood young man'; tsaâp-chúng yān 'mixed blood person'; a.f.: wân-huèt, wân-chúng (lit)

k'eí-shât actually, in fact, as a matter of fact; a.f.: sê-shât sheung, shât-tsaí sheung

ying tsík tsík 'a register, a list, a record of population, to be registered as a citizen of'; kwòk tsík 'nationality'; ying tsík 'British subject'; Mei tsík 'American citizenship'; Wā tsík 'Chinese nationality'; Ying abbreviation of Ying-Kwòk 'England'

yâp tsík to be naturalized, VO construction; yâp tsík Mei-Kwòk 'to be naturalized as an American citizen', a.f.: yâp Mei-Kwòk tsík, yâp Mei tsík

in-tsoî now, present time; a.f.: ī-ka (colloq), ka-hǎ (colloq), ka-chân, in (lit), kam (lit)

hing elder brother, a senior, used as a term of respect;

a.f.: taaî-ló (colloq), koh, kōh-koh, â-koh, hing (lit); ka hing (humble) 'my older brother'; lîng hing (lit, honorific) 'your brother'

taî younger brother, a junior, used conventionally by a speaker of himself; a.f.: sai-ló (colloq), taî (lit); shê taî (humble) 'my younger brother'; lîng taî (lit, honorific) 'your younger brother'; hing taî 'elder and younger brothers, brothers'

tsz elder sister; a.f.: taaî tsz, tsē-tse (colloq); ka-tse (humble) 'my elder sister'; ka-tse (lit, humble) 'my elder sister'; lîng tsé (lit, honorific) 'your elder sister'

tsz mooî mooî 'younger sister', a.f.: mooî\* (colloq), mooî-mooî\*, sai mooî\*, â-mooî\*, mooî (lit); shê mooî (humble) 'my younger sister'; lîng mooî (lit, honorific) 'your younger sister'; tsz mooî 'elder and younger sisters, sisters'

hui shai died, deceased, passed away, VO construction; a.f.: sei (lit, colloq), kwòh shan (colloq), sin shai (lit), sin yaū (lit), shan koò (lit), mōng (lit)

i-in still, yet, moreover, too, and; a.f.: chûng (colloq)  
IU 7, i (lit), yaū (lit), yîng (lit), yîng-in (lit, colloq)

tsoî shaang tsoî (lit) 'at, in, on, to rest with, to consist in, to be present, to be alive, with reference to, in case of, in point of', a.f.: hai (colloq); shaang 'alive, living, to be born, raw, not familiar with, new, student'; tsoî shaang 'living, alive'; a.f.: tsoî shai, hai tô (colloq)

## INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 28

## ORAL MATERIAL

Cheung Sheûng-Szê: Tui-m̄-chuê, tui-m̄-chuê. Ngõh-tei shik faân lè. Ts'ing taaî-ka ts'ui-pîn\* ts'õh. Paâk Sheûng-Wai, Wõng Siú-Tsé, nei-tei leung wai\* ts'õh-maaî yat-ts'ai\*, hó mã?

Paâk Sheûng-Wai: Hó à, À-Chim.

Cheung Sheûng-Szê: Ngõh-tei hei faai lè. Uê-sin shing-ming. Ka-sheung pîn faân chà pòh. Mõ shung shik-paaú faân à.

Paâk: M̄-hó kóm wâ, m̄-hó kóm wâ. Mi-yě kóm haak-hei à. Ngõh kwá-ló yat-t'iu. Mei shik ka-t'ing chué kè faân to m̄-chi kei toh shâp shai-kei là. Hõh-fòng Cheung T'aaî-T'aaî\* hai yat-kòh ming ch'ue. Tui-ue p'laang-yâm fong-mîn sò yaũ in-kaù. Kam-yât to m̄-chi kei shang sau tò, chi yaũ kóm hó kè kei-ooi shik yat-ts'aan kóm hó kè T'õng ts'aan.

Cheung T'aaî-Taai\*: Wâ, Paâk Sheûng-Wai m̄-chí kóng Kwóng-Tung wâ\* kóng-tak laũ-lei. I-ka lîn fung-tsûk tsaap-kwaân to hòk-maaî t'im. Nei pei yat-téng ko-mô\* ngõh taaî. Kei-foõ lîn ngaân, i, haú, pei to k'ám-maaî t'im.

Paâk: Wõng Siú-Tsé. Nei wâ ngõh kóng-tak tui mã? Cheung T'aaî-T'aaî\* hai yat-wai\* kóm hó kè ch'ue-sz. K'ui kè mēng\* ngõh téng to téng m̄-shiú là. À-Chim chan-hai saam shaang yaũ hâng là.



INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 28

M/Sgt Cheung: Pardon me for interrupting you. Dinner is served. Please be seated. Anywhere would be fine. Capt White, Miss Wong, how about you two sitting together?

Capt White: That would be a pleasure, Jim.

M/Sgt: Please help yourselves to the food. I have a statement to make: This is nothing fancy but a home-cooked meal. Should we run out of food, please help yourselves with rice. Of that, we have plenty.

White: Thank you, Jim. You are always modest. Being a bachelor, I have not eaten a home cooked meal for years. Mrs. Cheung is a good cook. She does wonders in cooking. I don't know what I have done to deserve an opportunity to taste an exotic Chinese dinner such as this.

Mrs. Cheung: My goodness! Not only does Capt White have a good command of Cantonese, but he also has a good knowledge of Chinese customs. Capt White, your compliments are most overwhelming and sincerely appreciated.

White: Miss Wong, don't you agree with me? Mrs. Cheung is a wonderful cook. I've heard so much about her cooking. Jim, you are simply a lucky fellow.

張上士：對唔住，對唔住。我地食飯啦。  
 請大地兩，隨便坐埋一。白上尉：好嗎？  
 你好地呀，亞占。預先聲明。家常便  
 張上士：我地起筷喇。有餸食話飽飯呀。  
 白：唔好敢我唔係，唔好一條世對唔知。  
 張太太：好嘍，今日機尉連高帽漆講廚亞  
 白：黃小姐一位聽唔少。

對唔住，對唔住。我地食飯啦。  
 請大地兩，隨便坐埋一。白上尉：好嗎？  
 你好地呀，亞占。預先聲明。家常便  
 張上士：我地起筷喇。有餸食話飽飯呀。  
 白：唔好敢我唔係，唔好一條世對唔知。  
 張太太：好嘍，今日機尉連高帽漆講廚亞  
 白：黃小姐一位聽唔少。

## READING MATERIAL

人少，唔傾，有煙，廳食，客慶，高飲，好酒，內飲，屋處，士喺，上家，張大，客。

埋地，客佢，人令，請，士齊，上一，張埋，坐地，依他，到小，黃，廣，時尉，飯上，食白，家請，而佢，柏人，兩白，好對。

既係，餸真，對餸，研究，有整，素佢，面以，方所，餸好，烹究，在講，太極，張又，種類，好自，種機，得。

QUESTIONS

Cheung Sheûng-Sz kè haak-t'eng shuè yaü m-shiú yän-haak. K'ui-tei hai shuè tsô mi-yě à?

Shik faân kè shi-haü, Cheung Sheûng-Sz ts'ing pin-kòh t'üng pin-kòh ts'òh-maai yat-ts'ai à?

K'ui tím-kaaí ts'ing k'ui-tei leüng yän ts'òh-maai yat-ts'ai à?

Paak Sheûng-Wai t'üng Wöng Siú-Tsé k'ing kè shi-haü, k'ui yung pin chung uë-in à?

K'ui kè Kwóng-Tung wâ\* kóng-tak tím à?

Tui-ue Chung-Kwòk kè fung-tsük tsaap-kwaàn, k'ui chung kei-tak mà?

Cheung T'aaí-T'aaí\* tsoi mi-yě fong-mîn sò yaü in-kaü à?

Paak Sheûng-Wai kit-chóh fan mei à?

K'ui chung m-chung-i Cheung T'aaí-T'aaí\* ching kè sùng à?

K'ui tsz-ts'ung kei shi chi haü, mei shik-kwòh kòm hó kè sùng à?

## INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 28

## VOCABULARY AND NOTES

lè emphatic final particle, affirmative or of finality

taaî-ka we all, all of us; ngõh-teî taaî-ka 'we all, all of us'; nei-teî taaî-ka 'you all, all of you'

yat-ts'ai\* (yat-ts'ai) together; ts'õh-maaî yat-ts'ai\* 'to sit together'; chuê-maaî yat-ts'ai 'to live together'; haang-maaî yat-ts'ai 'to walk together'

heî faaî IE, help yourself to the food, let's start eating, an expression used by the host of a dinner or banquet requesting the guests 'to raise their chopsticks'

shing-ming to make known, to inform, to make one's stand clear, to make a statement

ka sheung pin faân pin faân 'IE, ordinary meal'; Cf: pin faân IU 13; ka-sheung-pin-faân 'IE, a home cooked meal'

chà pòh final particle (for limiting),... only!

mõ shung shik-paaú faân IE, should we run out of food, please help yourself with rice.

kwá-ló yat-t'iu kwá 'single, widowed, solitary, few (lit)'; kwá-ló 'bachelor, widower'; kwá-foó 'widow'; kwá-ló yat-t'iu 'a bachelor, a single man'

keí toh how much? how many? quite a great deal; synonym: keí IU 9; keí toh shâp shai-keí 'quite a long time'

shai-keí century; AN: kòh

hõh-fong moreover, in addition, how much more? further more, besides; a.f.: fong-ch'é, i-ch'é, fong (lit), ch'é (lit)

ming ch'uê (ming ch'ui\*) ming 'famous, well known', IU 22; ch'uê 'cook', a.f.: ch'uê-sz, ch'ui\* (colloq), fõh-t'au\* (colloq); ming ch'uê 'famous cook, good cook'

p'aang-yâm (lit) cooking; a.f.: ching shung (colloq)

fong-mîn aspect, in...respect, side, phase, quasi AN; tui-ue...fong-mîn 'in regard to...', a.f.: tsoi...fong-mîn, hai...fong-mîn

sò (lit) usually, commonly, as a rule, heretofore; a.f.:

ts'ung-loi IU 23, sò-loi IU 25; sò 'plain, unornamented, white, simple'

in-kaù research, to search into, to investigate thoroughly, to study; yaũ in-kaù 'to accumulate experience through experiment, experienced in'; sò yaũ in-kaù 'usually experienced in, highly experienced in'

keí shang shau tò (lit) blessings derived from good deeds in past several lives, implying rare opportunity

laũ-lei fluent, fluently

fung-tsúk custom, trend, mode of living

téng AN for hat; roof, summit, top; tò téng 'reached the top'; yat-téng mô\* 'a hat'

ko mô\* mô\* 'hat' IU 11; ko mô\* (slang) 'flattery, compliment, praise'; taai ko mô\* 'to receive and give a compliment'; pei ko mô\* k'ui taai 'to flatter him'

taai to wear, such as hat, ring, ornament, eye-glasses

ĩ ear; a.f.: ĩ-tsaí; AN: chèk

pei nose; a.f.: pei-koh; AN: kòh

haú a mouth, entrance, an opening, a port, a hole, speech; a.f.: tsuí; AN: kòh

k'ám to cover, to close up; k'ám-maaí 'to cover'

neĩ peí yat téng ko mô\* ngõh taai, kei-foõ lĩn ngõh kè ngaãn ĩ, haú, peí to k'ám-maaí t'im 'the hat (of flattery) you gave me is so high that it covers up my eyes, ears, mouth and nose' implying compliments that one does not deserve

mēng\* name; a.f.: mīng (lit)

saam shaang yaũ hāng (lit) fortunate, a fortune for three lives, a stroke of luck; ngõh chan haí saam shaang yaũ hāng 'I am indeed fortunate'

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 29

ORAL MATERIAL

Leī Sheûng-Kaaù: Kam-yât haī À-Chim t'ūng Mǎ-Leī kè kít fan keī-nīm yât, yaū haī Mǎ-Leī kè shaang-yât. Heī s̄ ch'ūng-ch'ūng. Ngõh-teī kīng k'ui-teī yat-pooi, hó mà? À-Chim, Mǎ-Leī, kung-heī neī-teī! Ngõh-teī hei-mông neī-teī nīn-nīn yaū kam-yât, sui-sui yaū kam-chiu. Shaū peī Naām-Shaan, fuk uē Tung-Hoī.

Cheung Sheûng-S̄: M̄-kóm-tong, m̄-kóm-tong, Leī Sheûng-Kaaù. Ngõh t'ūng ngõh kè noi-ts̄ to fei-sheūng chi kóm-tsê.

Leī: Neī heūng ngõh-teī kóng keī kui, hó mà?

Sheûng-S̄: M̄-shai kwà, Sheûng-Kaaù. Neī chan-hai kau yau-mâk là. Ngõh i-wai m̄-shai wán ti kóm kè yē lai kaaú là.

Leī: Iù à, yat-tīng iù à. Kóh kòh haī mīng-līng.

Cheung: Hó hó, Sheûng-Kaaù. Kòk wai\* naām nuī p'āng-yaū, kòk wai\* loi-pan. Ngõh poón-loi tsaū m̄-shik ín-shuèt, kàng m̄-shik yūng Kwóng-Tung wâ\* ín-shuèt. Kei-ín neī-teī kòk wai\* kóm peī mīn\*, ngõh wai-yaū kóng keī kui. Uē-kwóh kóng-tak m̄-hó, ts'íng neī-teī m̄-hó siú. Kam-yât haī ngõh t'ūng ngõh kè noi-ts̄ kè kít fan keī-nīm yât. T'ūng-shī yaū haī ngõh kè noi-ts̄ kè shaang-yât. Tak-tó neī-teī kòk wai\* kóm sheúng mīn\* tò-lai ni shuè. Fei-sheūng chi wīng-hāng. Fei-sheūng chi kóm-tsê.....Ngõh t'ūng-shī yaū seúng ch'àn ni kòh kei-ooi toh-tsê kòk wai\* kè lai-mât, kòk wai\* kè shīng í ..... Táng ngõh kīng-faan neī-teī yat-pooi. Chuk neī-teī kīn-hong! Maan-s̄-shīng-í! Yám-shīng!

Kòh-Kòh: Toh-tsê, toh-tsê! Yám-shīng, yám-shīng!

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 29

Col Leĩ: Today is Jim and Mary's wedding anniversary and Mary's birthday. This home has been well bestowed with happiness. I would like to propose a toast to the host and hostess. Jim and Mary, our heartfelt congratulations. We wish you two many happy returns and all the happiness in the world.

M/Sgt Cheung: Thank you very much, Colonel. My wife and I are very grateful.

Leĩ: Won't you say a few words? A speech, perhaps?

M/Sgt: Is it absolutely necessary, Colonel? Sir, you have a wonderful sense of humor. I thought we could do away with all formalities.

Leĩ: It is necessary, and that's an order.

M/Sgt: Very well, sir. Here goes. Distinguished guests, friends, ladies and gentlemen, I don't know how to make a speech in the first place, and much less to make a speech in Chinese-Cantonese. Since you have honored me with your request, I shall endeavor to do my best. In case I don't do it well, please try not to laugh at me. Today is our wedding anniversary and my wife's birthday. We consider it a great honor that you came. We are very grateful...I wish to take this opportunity to thank each and every one of you for your beautiful gifts and the good wishes they convey...Permit me to return a toast to you. We wish all of you the best of health and success! Bottoms up!

All: Thank you. Bottoms up!



李 上 校：今日係亞占同瑪利，嘅喜嘅結婚紀念日，  
又係瑪利地，嘅一利，好嗎？事重重，我  
地敬占你比敢嘅地，亞望壽唔我地，希朝。  
張 上 士：我地向使以，賓用俾唔同又各幸趁位祝謝，  
李：你唔要好  
李張：呀好好  
李張：要  
今日係亞占同瑪利，嘅喜嘅結婚紀念日，  
又係瑪利地，嘅一利，好嗎？事重重，我  
地敬占你比敢嘅地，亞望壽唔我地，希朝。  
張 上 士：我地向使以，賓用俾唔同又各幸趁位祝謝，  
李：你唔要好  
李張：呀好好  
李張：要  
今日係亞占同瑪利，嘅喜嘅結婚紀念日，  
又係瑪利地，嘅一利，好嗎？事重重，我  
地敬占你比敢嘅地，亞望壽唔我地，希朝。  
張 上 士：我地向使以，賓用俾唔同又各幸趁位祝謝，  
李：你唔要好  
李張：呀好好  
李張：要  
今日係亞占同瑪利，嘅喜嘅結婚紀念日，  
又係瑪利地，嘅一利，好嗎？事重重，我  
地敬占你比敢嘅地，亞望壽唔我地，希朝。  
張 上 士：我地向使以，賓用俾唔同又各幸趁位祝謝，  
李：你唔要好  
李張：呀好好  
李張：要  
今日係亞占同瑪利，嘅喜嘅結婚紀念日，  
又係瑪利地，嘅一利，好嗎？事重重，我  
地敬占你比敢嘅地，亞望壽唔我地，希朝。  
張 上 士：我地向使以，賓用俾唔同又各幸趁位祝謝，  
李：你唔要好  
李張：呀好好  
李張：要

READING MATERIAL

唔嘅太，子太，日張好嘅，又，太，太，張念重，紀事，士婚喜，上結謂，張嘅所係，日西真，今佢係，

同太後來，賓張完的，未向講，少校佢後，唔上完，有李話講處，說士廳時嘅上飯飯義張，食意，廳，有去句，客物句落幾，嘅禮幾講講士嘅講續太，上黎，繼太張帶酒士張，地敬上請，佢太張賓

想更嘅高，講會體，我好齊意喜，機身，唔咁一盛歡好個地，賓想有處嘅咁幾呢你來我日呢位出係趁祝位，今黎各唔唔想，各啦，位對講都我酒，過講各；有餸家敬，校講黎倒物，同而位上經話得禮幸飯，各李已說，多榮嘅禮向，位嘅聚咁之日失時意，話各義相黎極今好同勝太，意位帶得，係，事太話有各又覺至真位萬張說更同，人之，各，嘅宜會吓本謝黎謝健講適機慶我感起多康

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 29

QUESTIONS

Kam-yât hai pin-kòh kè hó yât-tsú à?

Kam-yât hai k'ui leŭng yān tím-yeung\* kè hó yât-tsú à?

Uē-kwóh kam-yât hai neī t'ūng neī t'aaì-t'aaì\* kít-fan keī-nīm yât, neī tá-suèn tím-yeung\* hìng-hòh à?

Neī tá-suèn sùng ti mi-yě peī neī kè t'aaì-t'aaì\* à?

Shīk faân kè shī-haū, pin-kòh heung Cheung Sheung-Sz, Cheung T'aaì-T'aaì\* kìng tsaú à?

Leī Sheung-Kaaū heung k'ui leŭng yān kìng tsaú kè shī-haū, kóng keī kuī tím-yeung\* kè shuēt-wā à?

K'ui kóng-uēn chi haū, pin-kòh kai-tsūk kóng à?

Uē-kwóh neī hai kòh shuē, yāu yān ts'ing neī heī shan kóng keī kuī shuēt-wā, neī tím-yeung\* kóng à?

Shaū peī Naam-Shaan, fuk uē Tung-Hoi, ni leŭng kuī shuēt-wā hai hai mi-yě shī-haū yung kà?

Neī koó Cheung Sheung-Sz, Cheung T'aaì-T'aaì\* kam-yât kòk-tak tím à?

## VOCABULARY AND NOTES

heí s̄ ch'ūng-ch'ūng heí (lit) 'pleasure, joy, pleased with, happy', a.f.: foon-heí (colloq) IU 23; s̄ 'affair, matter, business, thing'; heí s̄ 'happy event'; ch'ūng-ch'ūng 'reiterated, duplicated, often, piled one on another, one after another, a great deal, many'; heí s̄ ch'ūng-ch'ūng 'many happy events'; at the same time; sam s̄ ch'ūng-ch'ūng 'restless mind, restlessness, many things on the mind'

king to respect, reverent attention to, to present respectfully, to honor; king tsaú 'to toast'

kung-heí to congratulate; synonym: kung-hôh, hôh (lit)

shaú peí Naām-Shaan (lit) shaú 'longevity'; peí 'to compare'; Naām-Shaan 'Mount South'; shaú peí Naām-Shaan 'a Chinese congratulatory saying: wishing you longevity; or literally, your longevity is as long as Mount South'

fuk uē Tung-Hoí (lit) fuk 'felicity'; uē 'as if, same as'; Tung-Hoí 'East Sea'; fuk uē Tung-Hoí 'a Chinese congratulatory saying: wishing you felicity; or literally, your felicity is as great as East Sea'; shaú peí Naām-Shaan, fuk uē Tung-Hoí are often used together in coordinate construction.

m̄-kóm-tong m̄-kóm 'dare not'; tong 'to undertake, to act as, to fill an office, to occupy a position, to be equal to, ought to, should, must, suitable, during'; m̄-kóm-tong 'IE, do not deserve the honor (humble); thank you'

kóm-tsê kóm 'to influence, to move, to touch, grateful, moved to thanks'; tsê (lit) 'toh-tsê' IU 13; kóm-tsê 'grateful for, many thanks'

heung facing toward, to or from; yat-heung 'formerly, of late'; heung...kóng keí kui 'to say a few words to...'

yau-mâk humorous; 'sense of humor'

m̄ng-lîng order, to order; synonym: m̄ng, lîng; ni kòh haí m̄ng-lîng 'this is an order'; m̄ng-lîng... 'to order...'

kòk each, every, all; kòk wai\*...(formal) 'you all...'

naām man, male, son (lit)

loí-pan guest; a.f.: yān-haàk, haàk (lit), pan (lit), pan-haàk (lit)

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 29

ín shuèt to make a speech; a.f.: ín kóng

kàng more, much more, still, again, besides, furthermore;  
kang 'to change, to replace, to alter'; a.f.: kàng-ka

wīng-hâng wīng (lit) 'glory, honor, pride, splendor,  
 flourishing, prosperous'; hâng 'fortunate, lucky'; wīng-hâng  
 'honor, pride, to be proud of'

ch'ân to take advantage of, to avail oneself of, to follow,  
 to go; ch'ân ni kòh kei-ooi 'to take advantage of this opportunity'

shīng ì shīng 'abundant, prosperous, flourishing, plenteous';  
ì 'intention, idea, meaning'; shīng ì 'your generous intentions'

chuk (lit) to bless, to invoke, to pray to, to wish, wishing;  
chuk neī shan-t'ai kīn-hong 'wishing you the best of health'

maân ten thousands, large numbers, all; maân kwòk 'all  
 nations'; maân sê 'all things, every thing, anything'

yám-shing! bottoms up, literally, drink to the victory;  
 a.f.: kon pooi

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 30

ORAL MATERIAL

Paâk Sheûng-Wai: Shóh-wai faai-oôt pat-chi shî-haû kwòh. Pat-chi pat-kòk, ĩ-king saam kang poón yě\*. À-Chim, ngõh poón-loi m̄-seúng kaaú saàn neĩ-teĩ kòm hó kè in-ooĩ, taân-hai shî-haû m̄-tsó là. Ngõh iù tsaú là.

Wõng Siú-Tsé: Ngõh to iù ch'é là, Mã-Leĩ.

Cheung Sheûng-Sz̄: Kòm tsó tsaú là? Ts'òh hã sin la. Tsoi yám yat-pooi, hó mã?

Paâk: Ngõh chan-hai iù tsaú là. T'ing-yat ngõh yaũ keĩ kîn yě iù tsô. Iù t'in kwong yat tsó tsaũ heĩ shan.

Wõng: Mã-Leĩ, neĩ kè tîn-wâ\* hai pin shuè à? Táng ngõh tá kòh tîn-wâ\* kiù kà tik-sz̄\* lai ch'e ngõh faan-huĩ.

Sheûng-Sz̄: M̄-shai, m̄-shai. Yat-chân-kaan táng ngõh t'üng Mã-Leĩ ch'e neĩ faan-huĩ.

Paâk: Wõng Siú-Tsé, neĩ hai pin shuè chuê à? M̄-shai mã-faãn kiù tik-sz̄\*. Táng ngõh ch'e neĩ faan-huĩ la.

Wõng: Ngõh hai...chuê. P'à m̄-t'üng lô pòh? Mã-faãn neĩ pòh.

Paâk: M̄-mã-faãn. Shûn-pîn\* shûn lô che. Ngõh chuê kóh shuè hai neĩ shuè kè foô-kân.

À-Chim, Mã-Leĩ, neĩ kè in-ooĩ hó shing-kung. Toh-tsê saai là pòh. Ngõh hei-mông tsui kân kè tseung-loi, ngõh ts'ing-faan neĩ-teĩ, piú-shî ngõh kè tsê ì. Tsó t'au là.

Wõng: Mã-Leĩ, toh-tsê saai là pòh. Ngõh tak-haãn tá tîn-wâ\* peĩ neĩ la. Tsó t'au là!

Sheûng-Sz̄: Neĩ-teĩ kòm sheúng-mîn\* háng lai. Ngõh-teĩ toh-tsê neĩ-teĩ chì chan. Tsó t'au là!

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 30

T'aai-T'aai\*: Paâk Sheûng-Wai, tak-haân ts'ui-pîn\* lai ts'õh à.

Paâk: Tak-haân yat-tîng lai paai-haû. Tsoi-kin là!

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 30

Capt White: I agree with the Chinese saying: "Time flies when one is enjoying himself." It is hard to realize it is midnight. Jim, I don't wish to break up your wonderful party, but it is kind of late and I am afraid I have to leave.

Miss Wōng: I have to go too, Mary.

M/Sgt Cheung: So soon? Please stay for a while longer. How about another drink?

White: I really have to go. I have a few things to do tomorrow, and I must get up early in the morning.

Wōng: Mary, where is your telephone? May I use it to call a cab?

M/Sgt: That won't be necessary. Mary and I will drive you home in just a moment.

White: Miss Wōng, where do you live? You don't have to send for a cab. I'd be happy to take you home.

Wōng: I live at... I am afraid that may be out of your way. After all, I hate to impose on you.

White: Nonsense. That's no bother. I live quite close to your place. Jim, Mary. Your party has been a great success. Thank you for a most enjoyable evening. I'll look forward to reciprocating your hospitality in the near future.

Wōng: Mary, thank you for everything. I'll call you when I have time. Good night!

M/Sgt: We are so glad that you came. We should thank you instead. Good night!



INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 30

Mrs: Capt White, you are welcome to our humble home at any time.

White: I shall drop by as soon as I have the opportunity to do  
so. Good-bye!

- 白上尉：所謂，快活不知時候過。不知不覺，已經攪唔早啦，瑪利。我唔好走。亞占宴會，但我本但。
- 黃小姐：我都要走啦？坐吓先啦。再飲一杯。
- 張上士：咁好嗎？
- 白：我真係要天光一早就起身處呀？等我打個。
- 黃：瑪利，你嘅電話架的使。一。
- 張上士：唔使，你翻去邊處住呀？唔使麻煩叫。
- 白：黃小姐的士。等我車你翻去邊處住呀？唔使麻煩叫。
- 黃：我係……住。怕唔同路播？麻煩你播。
- 白：唔麻煩。順便，順路啫。我住個處。
- 黃：你亞占，瑪利，你嘅宴會好成功。將來，多謝啱啦播。我希望最近嘅將來，我請翻你地，表示我嘅謝意。早抖啦。
- 黃：瑪利，多謝啱啦播。我得閒打電話俾你啦。早抖啦！

上士：你地咁賞面<sup>\*</sup>肯黎·我地多謝你地至  
真·早抖啦！  
太太<sup>\*</sup>：白上尉，得閒隨便<sup>\*</sup>黎坐呀·  
白：得閒一定黎拜候·再見啦！

## READING MATERIAL

宴留早黃不  
 家多馴，白  
 張想早辭。  
 本要告士。  
 少尉，亦的  
 越上忙，請  
 黎白事留話家  
 越。日多電翻  
 人散聽便打之  
 行而因不想送  
 上歡但，黃願  
 路盡。少。自  
 ，主傾人去，  
 深賓續內而去  
 已。士屋之自  
 夜完女且繼女  
 已黃，士此  
 會同起女願

兩，用意。  
 大功可謝  
 太成來之  
 張極將心  
 士都近內  
 上面最佢  
 張方望示  
 向各希表  
 再在佢，  
 一會。地  
 白宴會佢  
 ，此盛翻  
 時覺之請  
 門佢得會  
 出。多宴  
 將謝可之  
 致不樣  
 人係同

白耐，覺之  
 ，幾內佢念  
 內有屋。紀  
 車。入重可  
 在意黃重最  
 史送事又  
 車曼白心，  
 上羅。白義  
 人有車，意  
 二極落上有  
 白，女路最  
 黃事黃在中  
 送心。生  
 士言處跽一  
 上細黃屋佢  
 張女到翻係  
 黃經後日日  
 同已然此一

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 30

QUESTIONS

Ī-ka keí yê là?

I-ka ĩ-king saam kang poón yê\*; Cheung Sheûng-Sz̄ shuè kè ìn-ooî tím à?

Uē-kwóh neĩ huì yat-kòh kóm yeûng\* kè ìn-ooî, neĩ ooĩ m̄-ooĩ táng tò k'ui saàn chí tsaú à?

Paâk Sheûng-Wai tím-kaaĩ m̄-ts'òh noi ti à?

Tsó fân tsó heĩ, tui-ue yat-kòh yān kè shan-t'ai yaũ mǒ yik à?

Wōng Siú-Tsé ch'é kè shī-haũ, pin-kòh ch'e k'ui faan uk-k'eĩ à?

Uē-kwóh yê-maän neĩ t'ūng neĩ kè nuĩ p'aāng-yaũ ch'ut kaai, neĩ m̄-ch'e k'ui faan uk-k'eĩ, k'ui ooĩ kòk-tak tím à?

Cheung Sheûng-Sz̄ ni ts'z̄ kè ìn-ooî shīng m̄-shīng-kung à?

Uē-kwóh neĩ haĩ yat-kòh ìn-ooî kè chué-yān, neĩ seúng kóh kòh ìn-ooî shīng-kung, neĩ ying-koi tím-yeûng\* tsô à?

Paâk Sheûng-Wai sùng-chóh Wōng Siú-Tsé faan uk-k'eĩ chi haũ, k'ui kè sam kòk-tak tím à?

Uē-kwóh neĩ kè nuĩ p'aāng-yaũ waāk-ché t'aai-t'aai\* hó ts'z̄ Wōng Siú-Tsé kóm hó. Neĩ kòk-tak tím à?

## INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 30

## VOCABULARY AND NOTES

wai to speak, to say, to be called; shòh-wai 'so-called, so to speak' IU 20; mō shòh-wai 'doesn't matter, of no significance'

faai-oôt faai (lit) 'cheerful, happy, joyful'; pat faai (lit) 'unhappy'; faai-oôt 'happy'; synonym: faai-lòk, faai (lit), lòk (lit), foon-hei (colloq)

saam kang poòn yê\* yê\* (lot) 'night, late at night' IU 11; poòn yê\* 'midnight'; saam-kang 'the third watch (an old way of reporting time by a watchman in Old China)', a.f.: kaang, saam kang poòn yê\* 'midnight'

saàn to disperse, to wind up, to scatter, to dismiss; kaaú saàn 'to cause to terminate, to cause to wind up'; saàn hoi 'to scatter, to disperse'; saàn pô 'to go for a stroll'

in-ooî in (lit) 'banquet, a feast, to feast, to entertain'; ooî 'to meet, to assemble, meeting, convention, a society, an association'; in-ooî 'banquet, to entertain guests with a banquet'; AN: kòh

tsaú to leave, to run, to travel, to walk,; synonym: ch'é (colloq), haāng (lit), kò ts'z̄ (lit), ch'é 'to go away, to leave, to send off, to tear, to raise'; a.f.: tsaú

t'in kwong t'in 'sky, heaven, weather, a day'; kwong 'light, bright, to illuminate, honor', synonym: mīng (lit), leūng (lit); t'in kwong 'daybreak, dawn', a.f.: t'in mīng (lit), t'in leūng (lit)

tsó early, in the morning, soon, beforehand, previous, ago, sometime since; yat tsó 'as soon as it is dawn, early in the morning'

tik-sz\* taxi, taxicab, cab; AN: kà

yat-chân-kaan yat-chân 'a while, a short while, a moment, a shower of (rain)' IU 25; yat-chân-kaan 'a while, a short while, a moment'

mā-faān faān (lit) 'to trouble, to annoy, troublesome, unhappy'; sam faān 'restless, anxious, worried, troubled in mind'; mā-faān (colloq) 'to bother, troublesome'; mā-faān nei 'to bother you'; mā-faān nei yat-chân-kaan 'to bother you for a moment'

lô road, way, path, journey; AN: t'iū; lô-yān 'pedestrian'; lô sheūng 'on a journey, on the road'; t'ūng lô 'of same direction, same road'

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 30

shûn convenient, favorable, to obey, to agree, in accordance with, to go with; shûn-pîn\* 'convenient, when convenient'

k'ân near to, not far from, recent, to approach; kóh shuè hó k'ân 'that place is quite near'; a.f.: kân (lit)

foô-kân vicinity, nearby, in the neighborhood of; neĩ shuè kè foô-kân 'the vicinity of your place.'

tseung-loĩ tseung (lit) 'sign of future tense, will, shall, to take'; tseung-loĩ 'in the future, future'; tseung hui 'about to go'; tseung ué 'about to rain'; tseung tò 'about to arrive'; tsui kân tseung-loĩ 'in the near future'; tseung (lit) 'General Officer'

piú-shî piú (lit) 'to show, to make known'; piú-shî 'to express, to indicate, to show, to manifest'

tsê ì tsê (lit) 'to thank'; ì (lit) 'idea, opinion, intention, a wish, will, a thought, purpose, meaning'; tsê ì 'to thank, appreciation, gratitude'; chì tsê (lit) 'to thank, to tender one's thanks'

t'áu. to rest, to breathe, to gasp; synonym: yau-sik; sik (lit)

tsó t'áu IE, good night!; a.f.: mañ on (lit)

paai-hâu paai 'to do obeisance, to pay respect to, to visit, to salute'; hâu (lit) 'to wait, to wait for, to expect'; paai-hâu 'to call on, to visit'; a.f.: t'aàm (colloq), wán (colloq), paai-fóng (lit), fóng (lit), hâu (lit)

